

6th
PRIM.

HSTONE

2026

Second Term



Table of Contents

Module 1

Unit 1

Celebrating Creativity

Lesson 1	10
Practice on Lesson 1	14
Lesson 2	16
Practice on Lesson 2	21
Lesson 3	23
Practice on Lesson 3	27
Lessons 4 and 5	29
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	32
Unit Review	34
Check Your Vocabulary	35
Writing Time	36
Student's Book Corner	37
Test Yourself 1	38
Test Yourself 2	40
Al-Azhar Corner	42

Unit 2

Wonderful Inventions

Lesson 1	44
Practice on Lesson 1	47
Lesson 2	49
Practice on Lesson 2	55
Lesson 3	57
Practice on Lesson 3	61
Lessons 4 and 5	63
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	67
Unit Review	69
Check Your Vocabulary	70
Writing Time	71
Student's Book Corner	72
Test Yourself 1	73
Test Yourself 2	75
Al-Azhar Corner	77
Al Adwaa Revision on February	78
Al Adwaa Tests on February	81

Module 2

Unit 3

Hidden Gems of Egypt

Lesson 1	86
Practice on Lesson 1	89
Lesson 2	91
Practice on Lesson 2	98
Lesson 3	100
Practice on Lesson 3	104
Lessons 4 and 5	106
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	110
Unit Review	112
Check Your Vocabulary	113
Writing Time	114
Student's Book Corner	115
Test Yourself 1	116
Test Yourself 2	118
Al-Azhar Corner	120

Unit 4

Egypt on the Move

Lesson 1	122
Practice on Lesson 1	125
Lesson 2	127
Practice on Lesson 2	133
Lesson 3	135
Practice on Lesson 3	138
Lessons 4 and 5	140
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	144
Unit Review	146
Check Your Vocabulary	147
Writing Time	148
Student's Book Corner	149
Test Yourself 1	150
Test Yourself 2	152
Al-Azhar Corner	154
Al Adwaa Revision on March	155
Al Adwaa Tests on March	158



Module 3

Unit 5

Safe and smart Transportation from Egypt's Future

Lesson 1	163
Practice on Lesson 1	166
Lesson 2	168
Practice on Lesson 2	174
Lesson 3	176
Practice on Lesson 3	180
Lessons 4 and 5	182
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	185
Unit Review	187
Check Your Vocabulary	188
Writing Time	189
Student's Book Corner	190
Test Yourself 1	191
Test Yourself 2	193
Al-Azhar Corner	195

Unit 6

The Library That Time Forgot (Story)

Vocabulary	198
Story Elements	200
Story	202
Practice on Story	207

Final Revision and Tests

Revision on Units 1 and 2	210
Revision on Units 3 and 4	217
Revision on Unit 5	225
Story Corner	229
Conjugation of Verbs	232
Final Tests	235
Al-Azhar Tests	263
Tapescripts	273
Writing Answers	277
Dictation Copybook	282





MODULE 1

Unit 1: Celebrating Creativity

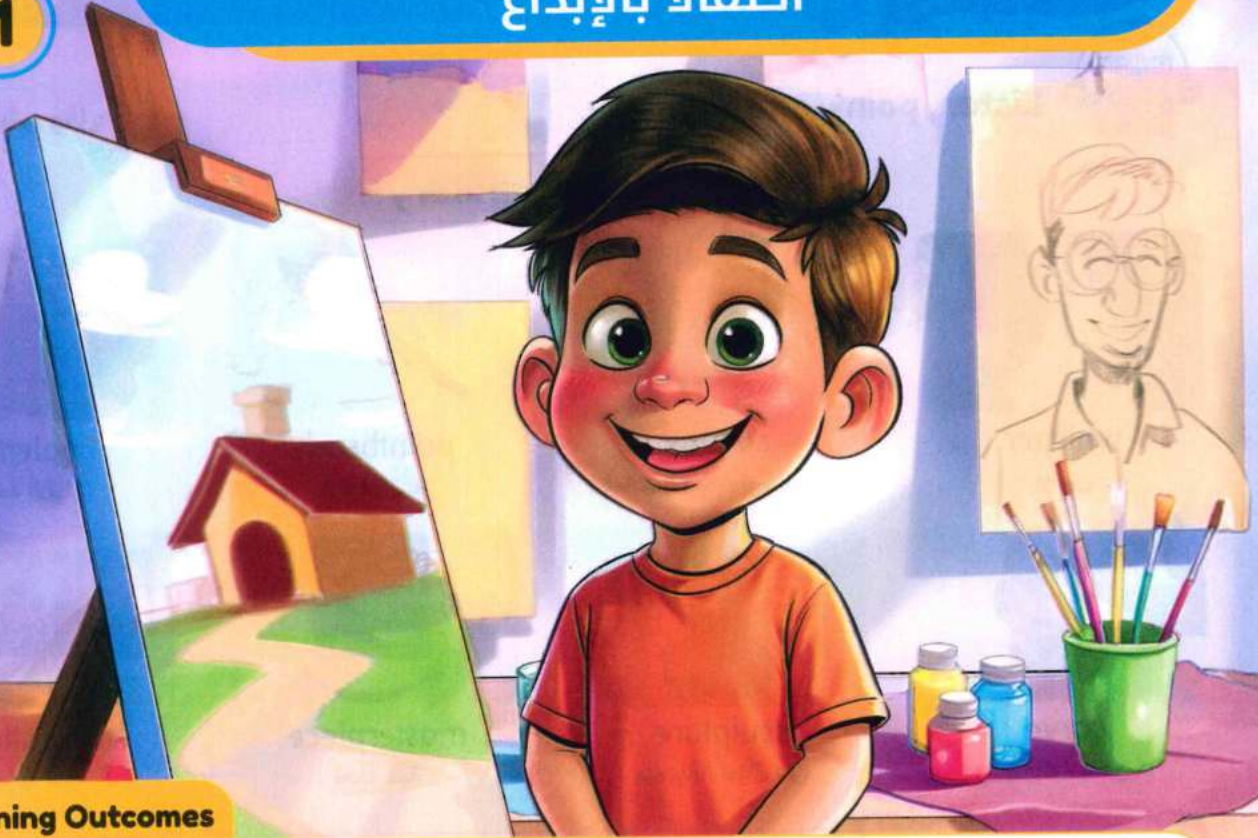
Unit 2: Wonderful Inventions

Unit

1

Celebrating Creativity

احتفالاً بالإبداع



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- understand the main ideas and specific details in short spoken texts about art.
- يفهم الفكرة العامة والتفاصيل المحددة في نصوص صوتية قصيرة عن الفن.
- answer questions based on short listening passages about artists or art studios.
- يجيب عن أسئلة مبنية على مقاطع استماع قصيرة عن فنانين أو مراسم فنية.
- count the number of syllables in spoken words and identify two and three-syllable words.
- يحدد عدد المقاطع الصوتية (syllables) في الكلمات المسموعة ويميز بين الكلمات ذات المقطعين أو الثلاثة.

Speaking:

- discuss and share thoughts about art, artists, and museums.
- يوضح ويناقش الأفكار حول الفن، والفنانين، والمتاحف.
- use art-related vocabulary to describe ideas for an art studio and different types of art.
- يستخدم مفردات خاصة بالفن ليوصف أفكارًا عن مرسم فني وأنواع مختلفة من الفنون.
- express and justify opinions clearly when talking about artwork and creativity.
- يعبر عن رأيه بوضوح ويبرر وجهة نظره عند الحديث عن الأعمال الفنية والإبداع.

Reading:

- read and understand short texts about art galleries, art studios, and famous artists.
- يقرأ ويفهم نصوصًا قصيرة عن معارض الفن، والمراسم الفنية، والفنانين المشهورين.
- identify and define key vocabulary words related to art and creativity.
- يحدد ويعرّف الكلمات الأساسية المتعلقة بالفن والإبداع.
- extract specific information from a text to answer comprehension questions.
- يستخرج معلومات محددة من النص للإجابة عن أسئلة الفهم.

Writing:

- write sentences correctly using new art-related vocabulary.
- يكتب جملًا صحيحة باستخدام مفردات جديدة خاصة بالفن.
- use conjunction pairs (both ... and, either ... or, neither ... nor) accurately in sentences.
- يستخدم الروابط (both ... and, either ... or, neither ... nor) بدقة في الجمل.
- design a poster about a famous place in Egypt.
- يصمّم ملصقًا عن مكان مشهور في مصر.



Lesson 1

A Visit to the Art Gallery



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



whisper

يهمس



canvas

قماش الرسم / لوح الرسم



paintbrush

فرشاة الرسم



palette

لوحة الألوان



carve

ينحت / يحفر



sculpture

منحوتة / تمثال فني



masterpiece

تحفة فنية



art gallery

معرض فنون

Extra vocabulary

young (adj)	شاب / صغير السن	artist	فنان	excited (adj)	متحمس
huge (adj)	ضخم	paintings	لوحات	pottery	فخار
giant (adj)	عملاق	wooden (adj)	خشبي	statue	تمثال
strong (adj)	قوي	powerful (adj)	قوي	strange (adj)	غريب

Expressions and Phrases

You know, ... تعرف... / كما تعلم...	Look at that! انظر إلى هذا!	walk into يدخل إلى
on the wall على الحائط	inspired by مُلهَم بـ	go home يذهب إلى المنزل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
whisper يهمس	whispered	wish يتمنى	wished
carve ينحت / يحفر	carved	point to يشير إلى	pointed to
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
draw يرسم	drew	take يرى	took
see يأخذ	saw	feel يشعر	felt

Definitions	whisper	to speak quietly so only one or two people could hear التحدث بهدوء بحيث يسمعه شخص أو شخصان فقط
	canvas	the surface (often cloth) an artist paints on السطح (غالبًا قماش) الذي يرسم عليه الفنان
	paintbrush	a soft tool used by artists to put paint on a picture أداة ناعمة يستخدمها الفنانون لوضع الطلاء على اللوحة
	palette	a flat board artists use to mix colors لوح ألوان مسطح يستخدمه الفنانون لمزج الألوان
	carve	to cut or shape wood or stone to make art أن تقطع أو تشكل الخشب أو الحجر لعمل فن
	sculpture	a piece of art made by shaping stone, wood, or metal قطعة فنية مصنوعة عن طريق تشكيل الحجر أو الخشب أو المعدن
	masterpiece	a beautiful piece of art made with great skill قطعة فنية جميلة مصنوعة بمهارة كبيرة

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- The boy is only six years old. He is very (giant – young – strong – huge).
- Mona is a great (artist – statue – pottery – wood). She makes beautiful drawings.
- The children were very (huge – strange – excited – giant) about the school trip.
- The king's (meal – statue – color – pottery) was made of stone and looked beautiful.
- The art gallery is full of amazing (paintings – games – spoons – tables) on the walls.

2. Choose the correct word for each definition:

- A soft tool used by artists to put paint on a picture is a
a) paintbrush b) pencil c) ruler d) marker
- A flat board artists use to mix colors is a
a) canvas b) palette c) notebook d) tray
- The surface (often cloth) that an artist paints on is called a
a) brush b) palette c) canvas d) table
- To cut or shape wood or stone to make art means to
a) draw b) paint c) carve d) wash
- To speak quietly so only one or two people could hear means to
a) shout b) whisper c) laugh d) sing



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

What kinds of art do you think you will see in an art gallery?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

You know, Lily was a young **artist**⁽¹⁾ who loved to draw. So, one Saturday, her family took her to a big art gallery. Oh, she was so excited!

"Wow," she whispered. "Look at that!" First, she saw these huge paintings on a canvas. "Mmm," she said, "I wish I had my **paintbrush**⁽²⁾ and **palette**⁽³⁾ with me right now!" Then, they walked into a room with beautiful **pottery**⁽⁴⁾ and a giant wooden

statue⁽⁵⁾ that an artist used to **carve**⁽⁶⁾. It looked so strong and powerful!

Lily also loved a strange, colorful sculpture. She even saw a huge, bright **mural**⁽⁷⁾ on the wall. Her mom pointed to a very old painting. "This," she said, "is a **masterpiece**⁽⁸⁾."

Lily felt so inspired by everything she saw. She couldn't wait to go home and start her own masterpiece right away!

- | | |
|-----|--------------|
| (1) | فنان |
| (2) | فرشاة الرسم |
| (3) | لوحة الألوان |
| (4) | فخار |
| (5) | تمثال |
| (6) | ينحت |
| (7) | لوحة جدارية |
| (8) | تحفة فنية |

Think

What did the artist use to carve the wooden statue?

كانت لي لي فنانة صغيرة تحب الرسم. وفي أحد أيام السبت، أخذتها أسرته إلى معرض فنون كبير. كانت متحمسة جدًا! قالت وهي تهمس: "مدهش ... انظري إلى هذا!" أولاً، رأت لوحات ضخمة مرسومة على القماش. قالت: "مم، أتمنى لو كان معي فرشاة الرسم ولوحة الألوان الآن!" ثم دخلوا غرفة فيها فخار جميل، وتمثال خشبي ضخمة نحتها أحد الفنانين. كان شكله قويًا ومهيبة! وأعجبت لي لي أيضًا بمجسم غريب وملون. كما رأت لوحة جدارية ضخمة ومشقة على الحائط. أشارت أمها إلى لوحة قديمة جدًا وقالت: «هذه تحفة فنية.» شعرت لي لي بالهام كبير من كل ما رآته. لم تستطع الانتظار للعودة إلى المنزل وبدء صنع تحفتها الفنية الخاصة فورًا!



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Lily is a young artist who loves to draw. لي لي فنانة صغيرة تحب الرسم.
- ✓ Her family takes her to a big art gallery on Saturday. تأخذها أسرتها إلى معرض فني كبير يوم السبت.
- ✓ Lily gets very excited when she sees the huge paintings on the canvas. تشعر لي لي بالحماس عندما ترى اللوحات الضخمة على القماش.
- ✓ She wishes she had her paintbrush and palette with her. تمنى لو كان معها فرشاتها ولوحة الألوان.
- ✓ She also sees beautiful pottery and a giant wooden statue carved by an artist. كما تشاهد فخارًا جميلًا وتمثالًا خشبيًا ضخمًا نحتَه فنان.
- ✓ A colorful sculpture and a bright mural catch her attention. تجذب انتباهها منحوتة ملونة ولوحة جدارية مشرقة.
- ✓ Her mom shows her an old painting and calls it a masterpiece. تشير والدتها إلى لوحة قديمة وتصفها بأنها تحفة فنية.
- ✓ Lily feels inspired and wants to go home to create her own masterpiece. تشعر لي لي بالإلهام وترغب في العودة للمنزل لصنع تحفتها الفنية الخاصة.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Read again and answer:

1 Where did Lily's family take her on Saturday?

.....

2 What did Lily wish she had with her at the gallery?

.....

3 How did Lily feel after visiting the gallery?

.....

2. Fill in the blanks using the words from the box: **SB**

whispered – canvas – palette – sculpture – masterpiece

1 The artist used a to mix red, blue, and yellow colors.

2 The teacher asked the students to paint on a large

3 The little girl a secret to her best friend during art class.

4 The museum displayed a beautiful stone of an ancient king.

5 The artist's final painting was a true that everyone admired.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:
(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Lily visited the art gallery on Sunday. (.....)
- 2 She saw huge paintings and colorful pottery. (.....)
- 3 Lily didn't admire the strange sculpture. (.....)
- 4 Her favorite artwork was a very old masterpiece. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The painted a beautiful picture of the sea.
a) doctor b) teacher c) artist d) farmer
- 2 The museum has a new made of stone.
a) song b) sculpture c) canvas d) story
- 3 The painter used a big to create his artwork.
a) chair b) whisper c) gallery d) canvas
- 4 My grandfather can animals from wood.
a) sleep b) carve c) paint d) eat
- 5 The of the king stands in the middle of the square.
a) tree b) statue c) bench d) gate
- 6 The artist worked for years to finish his
a) book b) dinner c) notebook d) masterpiece

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

artist – palette – whisper – paintbrush – carve

When I visited the art gallery, I was amazed by the colorful paintings on the walls. An artist stood in the corner holding a (1)..... filled with bright colors. She carefully put her (2)..... into the paint and added smooth lines to her canvas. Everyone spoke in a soft (3)....., so the (4)..... could focus on her beautiful work.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Thursday, I went on a trip to the art gallery with my friends. We were all very excited to see the beautiful paintings and sculptures inside. The gallery was quiet, and everyone spoke in a soft whisper as we walked around. I saw an artist using a palette and paintbrush to finish a painting. Another artist was trying to carve a small sculpture from wood. My friends and I took pictures and talked about our favorite artworks. At the end, we saw an amazing masterpiece that everyone loved. It was a wonderful trip that made us want to make art.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "carve" means to
 a) paint b) cut into shape c) wash d) draw
- 2 My favorite artwork was a bright
 a) drawing b) statue c) masterpiece d) picture book

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did the students see beautiful sculptures and paintings?

- 4 What did the artist use to finish the painting?

- 5 How did the trip make the students feel?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 and – I – paintbrush – had – my – palette.

- 2 paints – The creative – pictures – beautiful – artist.

- 3 do – pottery – people – Why – love?

- 4 will – display – new – The gallery – paintings. Super Question ?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 what is your favorite masterpiece

- 2 he can carve animals from wood



Lesson 2

What's in the Frame?



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

frame	إطار	photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية
artwork	عمل فني	imagination	خيال

Extra vocabulary

inside	بالداخل	painting	لوحة (رسم)	image	صورة
talent	موهبة	creativity	إبداع	great (adj)	عظيم
stone	حجر	shapes	أشكال	alive (adj)	حي / على قيد الحياة
famous (adj)	مشهور	modern (adj)	حديث	old (adj)	قديم
visitors	زوّار	boring (adj)	ممل	difficult (adj)	صعب

Expressions and Phrases

show something special	remember forever	stand quietly
يُظهر شيئاً مميزاً	يتذكر شيئاً للأبد	يقف بهدوء

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
use	used	mix	mixed
create	created	prefer	preferred
seem	seemed	enjoy	enjoyed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
tell	told	find	found
become	became		



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

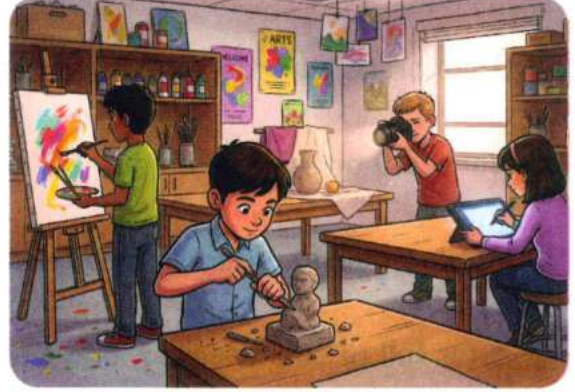


Warm up

Do you enjoy sculpting painting, or both?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Every **frame**⁽¹⁾ tells a story. Inside a frame, there can be either a painting or a **photograph**⁽²⁾ that shows something special. Artists use their paintbrush and palette to mix colors and create beautiful images on a canvas.



Some artists prefer sculpting while others enjoy painting, but both types of art show **talent**⁽³⁾ and creativity. Great artists can carve wood or stone to make strong shapes that seem alive!

Not every artwork is famous, but some become masterpieces that people remember forever. Inside a gallery, you can find both modern and **old pieces**⁽⁴⁾ of art. Sometimes, visitors stand quietly and whisper to each other about what they see.

Art is everywhere; it's neither boring nor difficult. It's full of color, feeling, and **imagination**⁽⁵⁾!

- | | |
|-----|-----------------|
| (1) | إطار |
| (2) | صورة فوتوغرافية |
| (3) | موهبة |
| (4) | قطع قديمة |
| (5) | خيال |

Think

Why do you think artists choose to paint or carve instead of taking photos?

كل إطار يحكي قصة. داخل الإطار يمكن أن توجد لوحة أو صورة فوتوغرافية تُظهر شيئاً مميزاً. يستخدم الفنانون فرشاة الرسم و لوحة الألوان لخلط الألوان وصنع صور جميلة على قماش الرسم. بعض الفنانين يفضلون النحت، بينما يستمتع آخرون بالرسم، ولكن كلا النوعين من الفن يُظهر الموهبة والإبداع. يمكن للفنانين العظماء نحت الخشب أو الحجر لصنع أشكال قوية تبدو وكأنها حية! ليست كل الأعمال الفنية مشهورة، لكن بعضها يصبح رائعاً يتذكرها الناس إلى الأبد. داخل صالة العرض، يمكنك أن تجد قطعاً فنية حديثة وقديمة. أحياناً يقف الزوار بهدوء ويتحدثون بهمس عما يرونه. الفن موجود في كل مكان؛ فهو ليس مملاً ولا صعباً. إنه ممتلئ بالألوان، والمشاعر، والخيال!



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Inside every frame, there can be either a painting or a photograph.
داخل الإطار، يمكن أن يكون هناك لوحة أو صورة فوتوغرافية.
- ✓ Artists use their paintbrush and palette to mix colors.
يستخدم الفنانون فرشاة الرسم ولوحة الألوان لمزج الألوان.
- ✓ Some artists prefer sculpting while others enjoy painting.
يفضل بعض الفنانون النحت، بينما يستمتع آخرون بالرسم.
- ✓ Great artists can carve wood or stone to make shapes.
يمكن للفنانين العظام نحت الخشب أو الحجر لصنع أشكال.
- ✓ Not every artwork is famous, but some become masterpieces.
ليست كل الأعمال الفنية مشهورة، لكن بعضها يصبح تحفاً فنية.
- ✓ Inside a gallery, visitors stand quietly and whisper.
داخل المعرض، يقف الزوار بهدوء ويتحدثون بصوت منخفض.
- ✓ Art is full of color, feeling, and imagination.
الفن ممتلئ بالألوان والمشاعر والخيال.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Write (T) True or (F) False: SB

- 1 Every frame always has a sculpture inside. (.....)
- 2 Artists use a paintbrush and palette to mix colors. (.....)
- 3 All artworks become famous masterpieces. (.....)
- 4 Art is described as neither boring nor difficult. (.....)

2. Find a word from the text that has a similar meaning to the word written in bold and write it down: SB

- 1 The artist wanted to **shape** the wood into a figure.
.....
- 2 The children looked at the painting and **spoke quietly** to each other.
.....
- 3 My cousin bought a small **painting surface** to practice her art.
.....
- 4 The famous artwork in the museum is known as a **great work of art**.
.....
- 5 Painters often mix colors on a **board for paint** before starting.
.....

Language in Use

Conjunction Pairs الروابط الثنائية

Conjunction Pair الرابط الثنائية	Usage الاستخدام	Example
either ... or إما ... أو	We can use either ... or to talk about a choice between two things. يمكننا استخدام إما...أو للحديث عن الاختيار بين شيئين.	<i>e.g.</i> Inside a frame, there can be either a painting or a photograph. داخل الإطار، يمكن أن يكون هناك إما لوحة فنية أو صورة فوتوغرافية.
neither ... nor لا ... ولا	We use neither ... nor to say that two things are not true. نستخدم لا ... ولا لنقول إن شيئين غير صحيحين أو لم يحدثا.	<i>e.g.</i> Art is neither boring nor difficult. الفن ليس مملاً ولا صعباً.
both ... and كلاهما ... و	We use both ... and to say that two things are true at the same time. نستخدم كليهما...و لنقول إن شيئين صحيحان في نفس الوقت.	<i>e.g.</i> You can find both modern and old pieces of art. يمكنك أن تجد كلاً من القطع الفنية الحديثة والقديمة.



Got it:

You can choose (**neither**) a painting (**nor**) a drawing for your project.
 ● الإجابة الصحيحة هي You can choose **either** a painting **or** a drawing for your project.
 لأننا نستخدم إما...أو للحديث عن الاختيار بين شيئين.



Note

● تستخدم (**neither ... nor**) للتعبير عن النفي بين خيارين أو أكثر دون الحاجة لاستخدام (**not**) أو أى أداة نفي أخرى. لذا يأتي استخدامها دائماً فى جمل مثبتة .

✓ Checkpoint Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- 1 She speaks (**either**) Spanish nor Italian.
- 2 He is (**neither**) tall and strong as he plays sports every day.
- 3 They will visit (**both**) the zoo nor the aquarium because it's raining.
- 4 The children ate both pizza (**nor**) sandwiches because they were very hungry.
- 5 We invited neither Ahmed (**and**) Sara as they are on holiday.

Quick Practice On Conjunction Pairs

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- 1 I ate (either) rice nor pasta as I wasn't hungry.
- 2 She studies languages so she speaks (neither) English and French.
- 3 They will watch (neither) a movie or a cartoon. It depends on their mood.
- 4 He played (both) football nor basketball because he had a broken leg.
- 5 He plays both football (nor) basketball since he likes sports.
- 6 He bought neither apples (or) bananas as he didn't like fruits.
- 7 They invited both Eslam (nor) Ahmed to the party as they are their best friends.
- 8 They can travel (neither) by bus or by train. Both go to Alexandria.
- 9 The child drank (either) milk nor juice as he wasn't thirsty.
- 10 They visited both the park (or) the museum. They really enjoyed that day.
- 11 You can sit here there. Both seats are free. (neither/nor) 
- 12 Amira Hadeer were at home. They were at the market. (Either/or) 
- 13 She will go to the park to the library. It depends on the weather. (neither/nor) 
- 14 He will eat rice pasta as he doesn't have time to cook both. (both/and) 
- 15 They had a long weekend, so they visited the park the museum. (either/or) 

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

1 and – both – milk – drank – The child – juice.

2 and – both – bought – bananas – Ahmed – apples.

3 neither – invited – nor – Ali – Omar – They.

4 either – You – or – can – juice – milk – have.

Practice



Lesson 2

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The artist put his painting in a beautiful
a) brush b) frame c) statue d) canvas
- 2 We had to, so we wouldn't wake the baby.
a) dance b) clap c) call d) whisper
- 3 The artist used a to mix the colors before painting.
a) palette b) frame c) sculpture d) photograph
- 4 My grandmother keeps old family in an album.
a) paintings b) photographs c) frames d) brushes
- 5 The museum has a new of a famous king made of stone.
a) palette b) sculpture c) canvas d) frame

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

statue – paintbrush – carve – stone – masterpieces

Art is a wonderful way to show creativity. In class, I used a (1)..... to make a colorful painting. The teacher showed us how artists work hard to create their (2)..... . Some students painted beautiful flowers, while others tried to (3)..... shapes from wood or (4)..... . Everyone was proud of their art and happy to share their work with the class.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Sarah wants to be an artist when she grows up. She loves painting on a canvas and mixing bright colors to make beautiful pictures. Sarah also enjoys watching people carve wood or stone to create amazing sculptures. Her teacher says she has great talent and creativity, and her artwork always makes people smile. Every day, she practices drawing, painting, and shaping clay. Sarah believes that art can make the world more beautiful, and she dreams of having her own art studio one day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about Sarah's
a) dream to be an artist b) favorite food
c) school trip d) birthday party
- 2 Sarah has great talent and
a) books b) energy c) money d) creativity

B Answer the following questions:

3 What do people carve to make sculptures?

.....

4 Why does Sarah practice drawing and painting every day?

.....

5 What does Sarah dream of having one day?

.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

1 She likes (both) tea nor coffee. She only drinks water.

2 My brother can play (either) the guitar and the piano very well.

3 They didn't visit (neither) the museum or the zoo yesterday.

4 He ate (either) pizza and pasta for lunch. He was very hungry!

5 You can take (both) the blue pen or the red one.

6 We saw both lions (nor) tigers at the zoo.

7 She will wear either the green dress (and) the yellow one at the party.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

1 frame – a – Every – story – tells.

.....

2 whisper – in – They – the library – quietly.

.....

3 boring – Art – difficult – is – neither – nor.

.....

4 masterpieces – Artists – imagination – to make – need. 

.....

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة مكونة من (60) كلمة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:



“Creative artists”

masterpiece – talent

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 3

An Egyptian Masterpiece



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



talented
موهوب



incredible
لا يصدق / مذهل



mural
لوحة جدارية



sketch
رسمة / تخطيط

Extra vocabulary

art exhibition	معرض فني	Egyptian (adj)	مصرى	woman	امراة
Sphinx	أبو الهول	absolutely	تمامًا / مطلقًا	definitely	بالتأكيد
university	جامعة	tiny (adj)	صغير جدًا	interesting (adj)	ممتع / شيق

Expressions and Phrases

It is about	إنه عن	his first sketch	أول رسمة تخطيطية له
I know!	أعلم! / صحيح!	called Nahdit Masr	يسمى نهضة مصر
make a big statue	يصنع تمثالًا كبيرًا	right next to	مباشرة بجانب

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
remember يتذكر	remembered	imagine يتخيل	imagined

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
begin يبدأ	began	make يصنع	made



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع ، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Ali

Karim, remember that amazing art exhibition we visited last month? It was about a truly talented Egyptian artist.

كریم، هل تتذكر معرض الفن المدهش الذى زرناه الشهر الماضى؟ كان عن فنان مصرى موهوب حقًا.

Oh, yes! It was about Mahmoud Mokhtar. He made a big statue called Nahdit Masr. It shows a woman and a sphinx. I cannot imagine how he began to carve this huge statue.

أوه نعم! كان عن محمود مختار. لقد صنع تمثالًا كبيرًا يسمى "نهضة مصر". يُظهر التمثال امرأة وأبو الهول. لا أستطيع أن أتخيل كيف بدأ فى نحت هذا التمثال الضخم.



Karim

I know! The sculpture was absolutely incredible. I also saw his first sketch for it. But I definitely preferred his paintings. Did you see the beautiful mural he created?

أعرف ذلك! كان التمثال رائعًا حقًا. وقد رأيت أيضًا أول رسمة تخطيطية له. لكننى بالتأكيد فضّلت لوحاته. هل رأيت اللوحة الجدارية الجميلة التى صنعها؟



Ali

I did! And I saw the small canvas he painted when he was a university student. It was right next to both his old palette and a tiny paintbrush. His pottery room was also very interesting. He really was a talented artist.

نعم رأيته! ورأيت أيضًا اللوحة الصغيرة التى رسمها عندما كان طالبًا فى الجامعة. كانت موجودة بجوار كل من لوح الألوان القديم وفرشاة الرسم الصغيرة. وغرفة الفخار الخاصة به كانت ممتعة جدًا أيضًا. لقد كان بالفعل فنانًا موهوبًا.



Karim



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Ali and Karim visited an amazing art exhibition last month.
زار علي وكريم معرضًا فنيًا رائعًا الشهر الماضي.
- ✓ The exhibition was about the talented Egyptian artist Mahmoud Mokhtar.
كان المعرض عن الفنان المصري الموهوب محمود مختار.
- ✓ Mahmoud Mokhtar created a famous statue called Nahdit Masr, showing a woman and a sphinx.
صنع مختار تمثالاً شهيرًا يسمى نهضة مصر، ويُظهر امرأة وأبو الهول.
- ✓ The boys admired his sculpture and saw the first sketch he made for it.
أعجب الولدان بالتمثال وشاهدوا أول رسمة تخطيطية له.
- ✓ Ali preferred Mokhtar's paintings and liked the beautiful mural he created.
فُضِّل على لوحات مختار وأعجبه الجدارية الجميلة التي صنعها.
- ✓ Karim saw a small canvas Mokhtar had painted at university, along with his old palette and tiny paintbrush.
رأى كريم لوحة صغيرة رسمها مختار في الجامعة بجوار لوح ألوان قديم وفرشاة صغيرة.
- ✓ They also found Mokhtar's pottery room interesting, showing he was a truly talented artist.
وجدوا غرفة الفخار ممتعة، مما يدل على أنه كان فنانًا موهوبًا حقًا.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Write (T) True or (F) False: SB

- 1 Mahmoud Mokhtar was a painter only and didn't make any sculptures. (.....)
- 2 Karim's favorite artwork was "Nahdit Masr". (.....)
- 3 Ali preferred Mahmoud Mokhtar's paintings to his sculptures. (.....)
- 4 Mahmoud Mokhtar used to paint with a big brush at university. (.....)
- 5 The students also saw Mokhtar's pottery room at the exhibition. (.....)

2. Read again and answer: SB

- 1 Who was the artist at the exhibition?
.....
- 2 What is the name of his most famous masterpiece?
.....

Pronunciation



Listen and say:

Word stress المقطع المشدّد في الكلمة

استمع وقل:

In English, one part of a word is said stronger and louder than the others. This is called **word stress**.
 في اللغة الإنجليزية، جزء واحد من الكلمة يُنطق بقوة ووضوح أكثر من باقي المقاطع. هذا يُسمى "التشديد".

- **PRE**sent (noun) → a gift
- pre**SENT** (verb) → to give or show something
- **RE**cord (noun) → a CD or collection of music
- re**CORD** (verb) → to make a sound or video recording



Note

Stress helps us understand and say words correctly.

التشديد يساعدنا على فهم الكلمات ونطقها بشكل صحيح.

Two-Syllable Words

There are two simple rules:

Nouns and **adjectives** → stress the first syllable

TAble – **PI**cture – **HA**ppy

Verbs → stress the second syllable

be**GIN** – de**CIDE** – re**LAX**

Three-Syllable Words

For longer words:

- If the word ends with **-er** or **-ly**, stress the first syllable.

MANager – **CLE**Verly – **HA**Ppily –
SILently



Tip!

Let's listen carefully to how the syllables change!

Word Syllables Pronunciation Tip:

ease سهولة → It's one long sound, stretch it like "eeez".

إنه صوت واحد طويل، قم بتمديده مثل "eeez".

easy سهل → Say it as EE-zee. The first syllable is strong.

قلها كـ EE-zee. المقطع الأول قوي.

easily بسهولة → Say it as EE-zuh-lee. Keep your voice light and smooth.

قلها كـ EE-zuh-lee. حافظ على صوتك خفيفًا وسلسًا.

Clap the syllables while you say them:

ease (1) 🖐️ easy (2) 🖐️🖐️ easily (3) 🖐️🖐️🖐️



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The museum showed a/an statue made by a famous artist.
a) angry b) terrible c) incredible d) bad
- 2 We saw a large wall painting called a in the city center.
a) mural b) picture c) notebook d) board
- 3 Before painting, she drew a small on paper.
a) photo b) sketch c) card d) mural
- 4 My sister teaches English at the
a) shop b) store c) hotel d) university
- 5 The "Nahdit Masr" statue is Mokhtar's most masterpiece that impressed many visitors. **SB**
a) sketched b) talented c) sketch d) incredible
- 6 Tourists visit the to take pictures near the Pyramids.
a) market b) Sphinx c) desert d) bridge
- 7 Mahmoud Mokhtar was a very Egyptian artist who could work in both painting and sculpture. **SB**
a) incredible b) talented c) old d) tall

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

imagine – paintings – paintbrush – carve – prefers

Ali is a young artist who loves to create things. He can (1) beautiful designs before he starts working. Sometimes he likes to (2) shapes in wood or stone, but he always (3) making pottery because it feels smooth and relaxing. His (4) are also full of color and life. Everyone who sees his art feels happy and proud of his talent.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Mahmoud Mokhtar was a famous Egyptian artist who loved creating beautiful sculptures. He worked hard to show his love for Egypt through his art. One of his best-known works is called Nahdit Masr, and many people admire it. When it was shown in an art exhibition, visitors were very **impressed** by its beauty and size. Today, Mahmoud Mokhtar is remembered as one of Egypt's greatest artists, and his works still inspire people everywhere.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "impressed" means
 a) bored b) angry c) surprised d) tired
- 2 Mahmoud Mokhtar was a famous Egyptian
 a) teacher b) writer c) artist d) doctor

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What is the name of Mahmoud Mokhtar's famous sculpture?

- 4 Where did people see Mahmoud Mokhtar's work?

- 5 How did visitors feel when they saw Mahmoud Mokhtar's art?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 a famous – Nahdit Masr – sculpture – is – Egyptian.

- 2 clapped – the talented – for – Everyone – singer.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 did you visit the pottery room at school

- 2 Mahmoud mokhtar was a famous egyptian artist.

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة مكونة من (60) كلمة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:



"My sister is an artist"

What does your sister like to paint or draw? – How does her art make you feel?

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing Like an Artist



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

clay	طين	vase	مزهريّة (فازة)	shade	ظل / لون مختلف
the Grand Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري الكبير	treasures	كنوز	artifacts	قطع أثرية

Extra vocabulary

wide (adj)	عريض	surface	سطح	smooth (adj)	ناعم
shiny (adj)	لامع	patterns	نقوش / رسومات	toothpick	عود أسنان
design	تصميم	ancient (adj)	قديم	history	تاريخ
halls	قاعات	golden (adj)	ذهبي	mask	قناع
King Tutankhamun	الملك توت عنخ آمون	tourists	سياح	temple	معبد

Expressions and Phrases

round base	قاعدة مستديرة	join workshops	يشارك في ورش عمل
learn about	يتعلم عن	around the middle	حول الوسط
narrow top	قمة ضيقة	garden café	كافيه الحديقة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
shape	يشكّل	shaped	يشكّل
polish	يلمّع	polished	يلمّع
dry	يجفّ	dried	يجفّ
visit	يزور	visited	يزور

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
see	يرى	saw	يرى
build	يبني	built	يبني

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

Do you like making things with clay or paint?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

I made a colorful **clay vase**⁽¹⁾. It is tall, with a wide, round base and a narrow top.

I used red, blue, and yellow clay to shape it carefully by hand, mixing some of the colors to create new shades. The **surface**⁽²⁾ feels smooth and shiny because I **polished**⁽³⁾ it after it dried.

There are small patterns around the middle, which I made using a **toothpick**⁽⁴⁾. I'm proud of my vase because I worked hard on the design and took my time to make it special. It's one of my favorite art projects!



- (1) مزهرية طينية
(2) سطح
(3) لَمَّع
(4) عود أسنان



Tip!

A **descriptive paragraph** helps you show your ideas, not just tell them.

تساعدك الفقرة الوصفية على إظهار أفكارك، وليس مجرد إخبارها.

Using **adjectives** and **details** (like bright colors or soft clay) helps the reader **imagine your art**.

يساعد استخدام الصفات والتفاصيل (مثل الألوان الزاهية أو الطين الناعم) القارئ على تخيل فنك.

It makes your writing more fun, clear, and interesting to read!

هذا يجعل كتابتك أكثر متعة ووضوحًا وجاذبية للقراءة!

When you write a descriptive paragraph, you can use these helpful words to make your writing more interesting.

Helpful Words

Colors الألوان	bright فاتح	dark داكن	colorful ملون	pale شاحب
Shapes الأشكال	round دائري	square مربع	triangle مثلث	curved منحنى
Textures القوام / الملمس	rough خشن	smooth ناعم	soft لين / ناعم	hard صلب
Sizes الأحجام	tiny صغير جدًا	small صغير	medium متوسط	large كبير huge ضخم

صنعتُ مزهرية ملونة من الطين. هي طويلة، قاعدتها مستديرة وعريضة، وقمتها ضيقة.

استخدمتُ الطين الأحمر والأزرق والأصفر وشكلتها بيدي بعناية. خلطت بعض الألوان لعمل ألوان جديدة.

سطح المزهرية ناعم ولامع لأنني لَمَّعته بعد أن جف. رسمتُ نقوشًا صغيرة حول الوسط باستخدام عود أسنان.

أنا فخور بمزهرية لأنني عملت عليها بجد وجعلتها مميزة. إنها واحدة من أحب مشاريع الفن لدي!

Think and create

A Poster

The Grand Egyptian Museum



People visit the museum to see ancient treasures and statues. They learn about the history of Egypt.

يزور الناس المتحف لرؤية الكنوز والتماثيل القديمة. يتعلمون عن تاريخ مصر.



The museum has many beautiful halls and galleries. Visitors can see the golden mask of King Tutankhamun and other famous artifacts.

يضم المتحف العديد من القاعات والصالات الجميلة. يمكن للزوار رؤية القناع الذهبي للملك توت عنخ آمون وغيرها من القطع الأثرية الشهيرة.



Students and tourists watch videos and join workshops. They learn how the ancient Egyptians built temples.

يشاهد الطلاب والسياح فيديوهات ويشاركون في ورش عمل. يتعلمون كيف بنى المصريون القداماء المعابد.



After the visit, families enjoy food in the museum's garden café. They talk about what they saw and take photos.

بعد الزيارة، تستمتع العائلات بالطعام في كافيه حديقة المتحف. يتحدثون عن ما شاهدوه ويلتقطون الصور.



Lessons 4 and 5

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We saw many paintings in the art gallery.
a) colorful b) broken c) boring d) dirty
- 2 We used soft to make a small cup.
a) paper b) metal c) wood d) clay
- 3 The artist shaped a beautiful for the flowers.
a) plate b) vase c) bowl d) cup
- 4 We learned how to the clay into animals.
a) paint b) break c) shape d) play
- 5 The artist mixed colors to create new
a) meals b) shades c) tables d) caps
- 6 The pot looked shiny and after the artist finished it.
a) broken b) polished c) cooked d) hurt
- 7 The clay pot was left outside until it in the sun.
a) colored b) broke c) dried d) painted
- 8 We learned how to draw simple in art class.
a) patterns b) songs c) sentences d) colors

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

clay – polished – toothpick – special – shades

Hamza made a colorful clay vase that is tall with a wide base and a narrow top. He used red, blue, and yellow clay, mixing some colors to create new (1)..... . After shaping it by hand, he (2)..... the vase to make it smooth and shiny. He added small patterns around the middle using a (3)..... . Hamza is proud of this vase because he worked hard to design it and make it (4)..... .

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last weekend, Farida and her family visited the Grand Egyptian Museum in Giza. It was an amazing trip! When they entered, they saw many exhibitions showing the history of ancient Egypt. There were golden statues, beautiful sculptures, and colorful pottery made thousands of years ago. Farida was excited to see the treasures of King Tutankhamun and his golden mask. The art gallery inside the museum also displayed paintings showing life in ancient Egypt. Farida enjoyed the visit so much and couldn't wait to tell her friends all about it.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "displayed" means
 a) played b) showed c) colored d) made
- 2 The museum had many showing the history of ancient Egypt.
 a) exhibitions b) gardens c) restaurants d) games

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did they see when they entered the museum?

.....

- 4 Which famous king's treasures did Farida see?

.....

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 made – clay – vase – I – a colorful.

.....

- 2 food – the museum's – Families – garden – enjoy – in.

.....

- 3 has – and galleries – The museum – many – halls – beautiful.

Super Question ?

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 the sky is full of gray clouds

.....

- 2 students and tourists watch videos and join workshops

.....

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة مكونة من (60) كلمة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:



"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

treasures – tourists

.....

Unit 1

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

whisper	يهمس	canvas	قماش الرسم / لوح الرسم
paintbrush	فرشاة الرسم	palette	لوحة الألوان
carve	ينحت / يحفر	sculpture	منحوتة / تمثال فني
masterpiece	تحفة فنية	art gallery	معرض فنون
artist	فنان	pottery	فخار
statue	تمثال	paintings	لوحات

Lesson (2)

frame	إطار	photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية
artwork	عمل فني	imagination	خيال
talent	موهبة	creativity	إبداع
shapes	أشكال	modern	حديث
visitors	زوّار	stone	حجر
inside	بالداخل	alive	حيّ / على قيد الحياة

Lesson (3)

talented	موهوب	incredible	لا يصدق / مذهل
mural	لوحة جدارية	sketch	رسمة / تخطيط
art exhibition	معرض فني	Egyptian	مصري
absolutely	تمامًا / مطلقًا	Sphinx	أبو الهول
tiny	صغير جدًا	interesting	ممتع / شيق
university	جامعة	Nahdit Masr	نهضة مصر

Lessons (4 and 5)

clay	طين	vase	مزهريّة
the Grand Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري الكبير	shade	ظل / لون مختلف
treasures	كنوز	artifacts	قطع أثرية
surface	سطح	King Tutankhamun	الملك توت عنخ آمون
golden	ذهبي	mask	قناع
tourists	سياح	temple	معبد

Language in Use

Conjunction Pairs الروابط الثنائية

Conjunction Pairs الرابطة الثنائية	Usage الاستخدام	Example
either ... or إما ... أو	We can use either ... or to talk about a choice between two things. يمكننا استخدام إما...أو للحديث عن الاختيار بين شيئين.	<i>e.g.</i> Inside a frame, there can be either a painting or a photograph.
neither ... nor لا ... ولا	We use neither ... nor to say that two things are not true. نستخدم لا ... ولا لنقول إن شيئين غير صحيحين أو لم يحدثا.	<i>e.g.</i> Art is neither boring nor difficult.
both ... and كلاهما ... و	We use both ... and to say that two things are true at the same time. نستخدم كلاهما...و لنقول إن شيئين صحيحان في نفس الوقت.	<i>e.g.</i> You can find both modern and old pieces of art.

Unit 1

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
sculpture		يهمس
huge		قماش الرسم / لوح الرسم
art gallery		فرشاة الرسم
statue		لوحة الألوان
masterpiece		منحوتة / تمثال فني

Lesson 2	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
famous		إطار
boring		عمل فني
shapes		خيال
great		صورة فوتوغرافية
image		موهبة

Lesson 3	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
Egyptian		موهوب
Sphinx		لا يصدق / مذهل
tiny		لوحة جدارية
interesting		رسمة / تخطيط
amazing		معرض فني
university		امراة

Lessons 4 and 5	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
halls		طين
mask		مزهريّة
ancient		كنوز
shiny		قطع أثرية
golden		نقوش / رسومات

Conjugation of verbs

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصرفات الأفعال.

Present	Past	Present	Past
wish	.....	.....	whispered
.....	took	begin	.....
carve	.....	imagine	.....
.....	found	.....	built
tell	.....	.....	saw

”لتسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب“.



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about "A visit to the museum":

- o Start with the time of the visit and say who you went with.
ابداً بوقت الزيارة و اذكر من ذهب معك.
- o Mention the name of the museum and describe what you saw there.
اذكر اسم المتحف وصف الأشياء التي رأيته في المتحف.
- o Say what you learned and say what you did at the end.
اذكر ما الذي تعلمته أو استفدت منه و اذكر آخر شيء فعلته قبل أن تغادر.
- o End with your feelings.
اختم بجملة عن شعورك.

"A visit to the museum"

I visited the museum last Saturday morning. I went with my family. The museum is called the Grand Egyptian Museum. We saw many ancient artifacts, including statues, jewelry, and old paintings. I learned a lot about ancient Egyptian history and culture. At the end, we bought some souvenirs from the museum shop. We enjoyed food in the museum's garden café. We felt happy and excited after visiting the museum.

How to Write About "Your favorite artwork":

- o Start with the name of your favorite artwork.
ابداً بذكر اسم العمل الفني المفضل لديك.
- o Say what type of art it is and how you made or saw it.
اذكر نوع العمل الفني وكيف صنعته أو رأيته.
- o Describe what it looks like (colors, shapes, objects, etc.).
صف شكله (الألوان، الأشكال، الأشياء الموجودة فيه...).
- o Explain why you like it or how it makes you feel.
اشرح لماذا تحبه أو كيف يجعلك تشعر.
- o End your paragraph with a simple opinion or feeling.
اختم الفقرة بجملة تعبر عن رأيك أو شعورك.

"My favorite artwork"

My favorite artwork is a colorful painting of a sunset over the sea. I made it in my art class using a paintbrush and bright colors. The sky is orange and pink, and the water shines like gold. I like it because it makes me feel calm and happy. This painting is special to me, and I enjoy looking at it every day.

1 Fill in the blanks using the words from the box: أملأ الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات من المربع:

canvas – paintbrush – palette – carve – mural

- 1 The artist spent an afternoon in the studio to a figure from a block of marble.
- 2 During the workshop, we painted on a small using bright colors.
- 3 The girls made a large on the walls of the school.
- 4 She carefully selected colors from her before starting the painting.
- 5 The child held a tiny to add details to her small painting.

2 Complete the sentences using either ... or, neither ... nor, or both ... and: أكمل الجمل باستخدام إما ... أو، لا ... ولا، أو كليهما ... و:

- 1 You can choose a painting a drawing for your project.
- 2 The classroom is organized clean, it's always messy.
- 3 You can use the ruler the pencil to draw the picture. You have the two.
- 4 The new teacher is kind helpful.
- 5 The museum has old artworks modern ones.

3 Read the word, then choose the correct syllable split: اقرأ الكلمة، ثم اختر تقسيم المقطع الصحيح:

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 amazing | a) am-azing | b) a-maz-ing |
| 2 sculpture | a) sculp-ture | b) scu-lpture |
| 3 museum | a) mu-se-um | b) mus-eum |
| 4 drawing | a) d-rawing | b) draw-ing |

4 Match the word to its meaning: صل الكلمة بمعناها:

1 whisper	a) a soft tool used by artists to put paint on a picture
2 canvas	b) to cut or shape wood or stone to make art
3 paintbrush	c) to speak quietly so only one or two people could hear
4 palette	d) a beautiful piece of art made with great skill
5 carve	e) a flat board artists use to mix colors
6 sculpture	f) a piece of art made by shaping stone, wood, or metal
7 masterpiece	g) the surface (often cloth) an artist paints on



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:
(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

2

- 1 The vase was made of wood. (.....)
- 2 The base of the vase is round. (.....)
- 3 Mona used red, blue, and black clay to make the vase bright. (.....)
- 4 Mona added small patterns with a toothpick. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

- 1 We saw beautiful from ancient Egypt in the museum.
a) toys b) artifacts c) stories d) plants
- 2 Mohamed Salah is a very football player.
a) slow b) talented c) lazy d) tall
- 3 You can travel by train or by bus to Alexandria.
a) either b) both c) neither d) so
- 4 She was so happy as she found her pencil case and her water bottle in her bag.
a) either b) both c) neither d) and

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

2

artworks – carve – modern – proud – paintbrush

In the art gallery, I saw a beautiful statue that looked so real. The artist used special tools to (1)..... it carefully from stone. Near the statue, there were colorful paintings made with a (2)..... Each one showed amazing talent and creativity. The guide said these (3)..... were true masterpieces that people from all over the world come to see and admire. I felt (4)..... of such wonderful art.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Hamza and Malek visited the art gallery; everything felt calm and quiet. People spoke in a whisper as they looked at the beautiful paintings. Hamza watched an artist working on a canvas, holding a paintbrush and a palette full of bright colors. In another room, Malek saw a man using tools to carve a piece of stone into a wonderful sculpture. Every artwork showed great skill and creativity. Their favorite one was a large masterpiece that filled the room with beauty and inspiration.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
a) learning how to draw b) visiting an art gallery
c) planting trees in a garden d) going shopping with friends
- 2 The artist mixed colors on a
a) plate b) palette c) tray d) board

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did Hamza and Malek go?
- 4 What did Malek see?
- 5 Which artwork was their favorite?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

4

- 1 I want to buy both apples (nor) oranges from the market.
- 2 We have two options as we can (both) walk to school or take the bus.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

2

- 1 mask – The – is – famous – golden – very.
.....
- 2 inside – Tourists – the museum – pictures – take.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- 1 The story of King tutankhamun is incredible
- 2 Did you see ali at the café

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة مكونة من (60) كلمة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

7

“My favorite artist”

Mahmoud Mokhtar – talented



.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

- 1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:** استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ: (2)
(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Art is a beautiful way to express feelings. (.....)
- 2 Inside a frame, there can be a toy or a photograph. (.....)
- 3 Artists use brushes and colors to create boring images. (.....)
- 4 Some artists carve stone or wood into sculptures. (.....)



Reading

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: (2)

- 1 The artist painted a colorful on the school wall.
a) mural b) sculpture c) statue d) frame
- 2 The new library is both quiet comfortable. It is really amazing.
a) both b) either c) neither d) and
- 3 The artist used a to draw fine lines on the picture.
a) palette b) frame c) paintbrush d) sculpture
- 4 The classroom is organized nor clean, it's always messy.
a) both b) either c) neither d) and

- 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:** اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة: (2)

incredible – sketch – toothpick – painting – artist

Sara spent the afternoon in her art room. She started with a quick (1)..... of a bird on paper. Using a (2)....., she added tiny details to a clay sculpture. Her friends thought her work was (3)..... . Finally, she finished a colorful (4)..... of the garden, full of flowers and sunlight. Sara felt happy and creative.

- 4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: (7)

One of the most famous Egyptian masterpieces is the statue Nahdit Masr by the great artist Mahmoud Mokhtar. This artwork shows an Egyptian woman standing beside the sphinx. Mokhtar used his great creativity and skill to carve it from stone, making it look powerful and full of life. The statue stands near Cairo University,

where many people visit to admire its beauty. This incredible sculpture shows the talent of Egyptian artists and their love for art and history.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Mahmoud Mokhtar was a/an
 a) singer b) writer c) artist d) teacher
- 2 The underlined word "incredible" means
 a) boring b) amazing c) ugly d) terrible

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Which material did Mokhtar use to carve the statue?
- 4 Where does the statue stand?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

4

- 1 You can choose (neither) this book or that one.
- 2 My friend speaks (either) English and French fluently.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

2

- 1 mural – the – Did – beautiful – see – you?

- 2 visit – to see – People – treasures – the museum – ancient.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- 1 they learn how the ancient egyptians built temples.
- 2 who was the artist at the exhibition

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة مكونة من (60) كلمة باستخدام الكلمات الآتية:

7

"A day at the museum"

treasures – history





A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل الحوار:

talented – artifacts – photos – Museums – shiny – golden

Farida : Grandpa, I really enjoyed our visit to the museum today!

Grandfather : I'm glad, Farida. What did you like the most?

Farida : I loved the (1) mask of King Tutankhamun. It was so (2)!

Grandfather : Yes, it's one of Egypt's most famous (3)

Farida : I also took (4) of the statues and treasures.

Grandfather : Wonderful! (5) help us learn about our great history.

Farida : I want to go again next weekend!

B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

1 She read (both) the story nor the book.

2 I'll buy either a shirt (nor) a jacket. I can't afford both.

3 The new teacher is (either) kind and helpful.

4 Students can choose (both) math or science for their project.

5 The museum has (neither) old and modern paintings.

3 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 The painting was inside a (palette – frame – sculpture).

2 The artist painted beautiful flowers on a large (photograph – canvas – palate).

3 We saw (both – neither – either) Ahmed nor Samy at school today.

4 The movie was both long (or – nor – and) boring.

5 I could find (neither – both – either) my pen nor my notebook. My desk was very messy.

6 I used a (marker – ruler – toothpick) to draw tiny lines.

7 We love doing (dances – art – stories) projects in the art class.

8 The artist used a (palette – plate – tray) to mix colors.

9 She read (neither – both – either) the story and the poem. She enjoys reading.

10 You can take (either – neither – both) the bus or the train to school.

C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

اقرأ و ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفه ثم استبدالها:

1 canvas – palette – paintbrush – statue ()

2 gallery – museum – hall – pencil ()

3 camera – pottery – vase – clay ()

4 whisper – talk – draw – incredible ()

5 artwork – sandwich – masterpiece – sketch ()

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

اقرأ الفقرة الآتية، ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Art is a beautiful way to express feelings and ideas. In an art gallery, we can see paintings, sculptures, and pottery made by talented artists. Each artwork tells a story and shows great creativity. Some artists use a paintbrush and a palette to mix colors, while others carve stone or wood to make sculptures. Every frame, sketch, or masterpiece shows imagination and skill. Art is everywhere, and it always makes the world more colorful and inspiring.

A Write "True" or "False":

1 Art helps people show their feelings and ideas. ()

2 We can see artwork only in schools. ()

3 Some artists use a paintbrush and palette to mix colors. ()

B Choose the correct answer:

4 Every frame or sketch shows (size – imagination – difficult) and skill.

5 Art can make the world more (colorful – bad – empty).

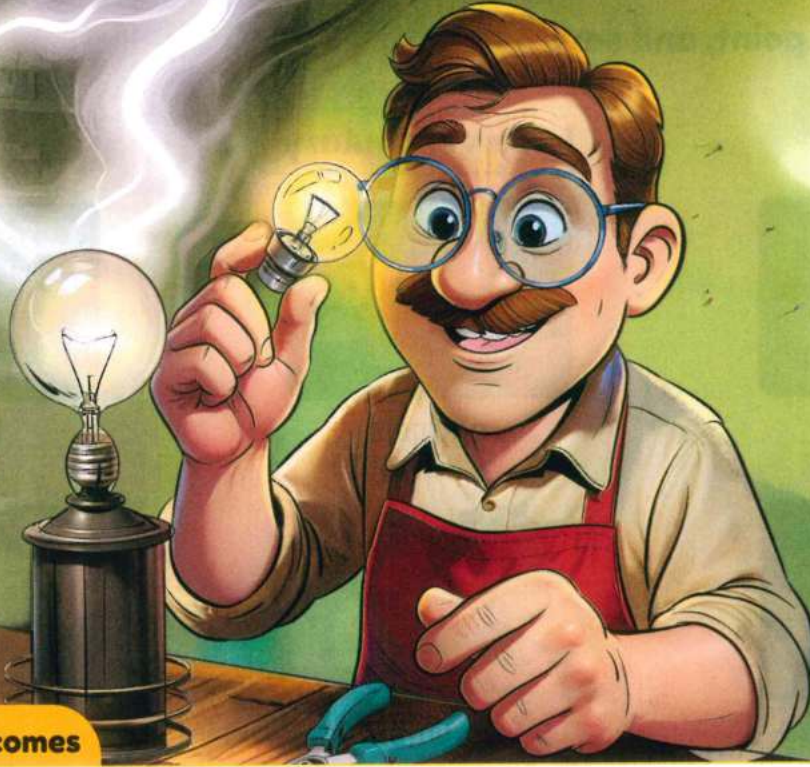
D) Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of Five sentences:

اكتب فقرة قصيرة مكونة من 5 جمل:

"Visiting an art gallery"

paintings – artwork – talented – artists – exhibition



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على:

Listening:

- identify the main ideas and specific details in short talks or interviews about inventions and inventors.
- يحدد الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل الدقيقة في الأحاديث القصيرة أو المقابلات التي تتناول الاختراعات والمخترعين.
- follow step-by-step spoken instructions for using or building a gadget.
- يتبع التعليمات الشفهية خطوة بخطوة لاستخدام أو بناء أداة.
- identify key vocabulary and phrases related to inventions while listening.
- يتعرف على المفردات والعبارات الأساسية المتعلقة بالاختراعات أثناء الاستماع.

Speaking:

- describe an invention and explain how it works using clear sentences.
- يصف اختراعًا ويشرح كيفية عمله باستخدام جمل واضحة.
- discuss problems and brainstorm creative gadget ideas.
- يناقش المشكلات وي طرح أفكارًا إبداعية للأدوات.
- present and describe a model or drawing of an invention clearly to others.
- يقدم ويصف نموذج أو رسم لاختراع بوضوح للآخرين.

Reading:

- identify key vocabulary words related to ancient and modern inventions.
- يحدد الكلمات الأساسية المتعلقة بالاختراعات القديمة والحديثة.
- identify the main ideas and the sequence of events in a text.
- يحدد الأفكار الرئيسية وتسلسل الأحداث في النص.
- recognize and understand the meaning of prefixes (re-, un-) in context.
- يتعرف على ويفهم معنى البادئات (re-, un-) في السياق.

Writing:

- write a short paragraph describing an invention idea, explaining its purpose, design, and benefits.
- يكتب فقرة قصيرة تصف فكرة اختراع، ويشرح الغرض منه وتصميمه وفوائده.
- use key vocabulary and relative pronouns (who, which, that, whose) correctly in writing.
- يستخدم المفردات الأساسية وضمائر الوصل (who, which, that, whose) بشكل صحيح في الكتابة.
- create a simple blueprint or design for a new gadget.
- يبتكر مخططًا أو تصميمًا بسيطًا لأداة جديدة.



Lesson 1

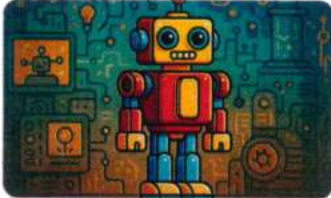
The Brilliant Engineer



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

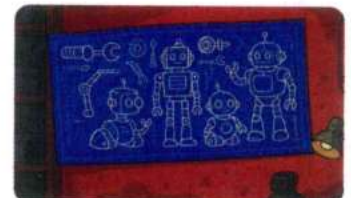
Main vocabulary



invention
اختراع



gadgets
أجهزة صغيرة



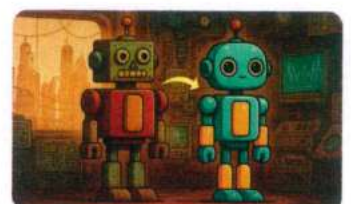
blueprint
مخطط



tools
أدوات



assemble
يجمع



improve
يحسن

Extra vocabulary

talented (adj)	موهوب	engineer	مهندس	solar robot	روبوت شمسي
machine	آلة	step	خطوة	detailed (adj)	تفصيلي
right (adj)	صحيح	solar power	طاقة شمسية	wheels	عجل (إطارات)
easily	بسهولة	ideas	أفكار	model	نموذج

Expressions and Phrases

Welcome back!

مرحبا بعودتكم!

Let's + (inf.)

هيا

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
create يبدع/ ينشئ	created	design يصمم	designed
move يتحرك	moved	assemble يجمع	assembled
improve يحسن	improved	explore يستكشف	explored

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
tell يخبر	told	run on يعمل على	ran on



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Interviewer

Welcome back! Today, we have a talented young engineer here with an amazing invention—the solar robot gadget. Can you tell us more about this gadget?

مرحباً بعودتكم! اليوم معنا مهندس شاب موهوب مع اختراعاً مذهلاً—جهاز الروبوت الشمسي. هل يمكنك أن تخبرنا المزيد عن هذا الجهاز؟



Young Engineer

Thank you! I wanted to create a simple gadget that feels like a small machine. The first step was designing a detailed blueprint.

شكراً لك! أردت أن أبتكر جهازاً بسيطاً يبدو وكأنه آلة صغيرة. كانت الخطوة الأولى هي تصميم مخطط تفصيلي.



Interviewer

Wow! How do we use it?

رائع! كيف نستخدمه؟

First, you assemble the small parts using the right tools. The robot runs on solar power, so the wheels move when you place it in the sun. If something isn't working, you can easily improve it. This invention is a fun way to explore new ideas every day. Let's get started!

أولاً، تقوم بتجميع الأجزاء الصغيرة باستخدام الأدوات المناسبة. يعمل الروبوت بالطاقة الشمسية، لذا تتحرك العجلات عندما تضعه تحت الشمس. وإذا كان هناك شيء لا يعمل، يمكنك تحسينه بسهولة. هذا الاختراع طريقة ممتعة لاستكشاف أفكار جديدة كل يوم. هيا نبدأ!



Young Engineer

Definitions	blueprint	detailed plan or drawing for making something	خطة أو رسم تفصيلي لصنع شيء ما
	assemble	to put parts together to make a whole	أن تضع الأجزاء معاً لتكوين شكلاً كاملاً
	improve	to make something better, or more effective	جعل شيء ما أفضل أو أكثر فاعلية
	tools	things used to fix, build, or create things	أشياء تستخدم لتصليح، بناء أو صنع أشياء
	invention	new idea, product, or method created for the first time	فكرة، منتج، أو طريقة جديدة تبتكر لأول مرة
	gadget	a small, useful device or tool	جهاز أو أداة صغيرة ومفيدة



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ A young engineer presents a new invention: a solar robot gadget.
يقدم مهندس شاب اختراعًا جديدًا: جهاز روبوت شمسي.
- ✓ The interviewer asks for more information about the gadget.
يطلب المحاور المزيد من المعلومات حول الجهاز.
- ✓ The engineer explains that he wanted to create a simple machine-like gadget.
يوضح المهندس أنه أراد ابتكار جهاز بسيط يشبه الآلة الصغيرة.
- ✓ The first step in making it was designing a detailed blueprint.
كانت الخطوة الأولى في صنعه هي تصميم مخطط تفصيلي.
- ✓ The interviewer asks how the gadget is used.
يسأل المحاور كيف يتم استخدام الجهاز.
- ✓ The engineer explains that the robot is assembled using small parts and tools.
أوضح المهندس أن الروبوت يتم تجميعه باستخدام أجزاء وأدوات صغيرة.
- ✓ The robot runs on solar power, moves in the sun, and can be easily improved.
يعمل الروبوت بالطاقة الشمسية، وتتحرك عجلاته عند وضعه في الشمس، ويمكن تحسينه بسهولة.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① The gadget is a small, useful (toy – book – phone – device).
- ② The robot (draws – starts – runs – plays) on solar power.
- ③ His blueprint was very (simple – colorful – empty – detailed), showing every part clearly.
- ④ If something isn't working, you can (improve – broke – lose – miss) it easily.
- ⑤ The invention is a (boring – fun – bad – slow) way to explore ideas.

2. Read again and answer:



- ① What is the invention that the young engineer shows?
- ② What was the first step in creating the gadget?
- ③ How do the wheels of the robot move?

Practice



Lesson 1

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The young engineer first designed a clear blueprint before assembling the robot. (.....)
- 2 The robot runs on battery power. (.....)
- 3 If something doesn't work, you can improve it easily. (.....)
- 4 The invention helps people explore new ideas in a fun way. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The engineer had a idea that changed the world.
a) boring b) weak c) brilliant d) simple
- 2 The telephone is a great that helped a lot of people.
a) celebration b) invention c) vacation d) invitation
- 3 "....." are things used to fix, build, or create things.
a) Tools b) Blueprints c) Gadgets d) Engineers
- 4 We need to the parts to make the chair.
a) throw b) break c) assemble d) draw
- 5 This new can make fresh juice in just seconds.
a) machine b) bottle c) ruler d) notebook
- 6 "....." means to make something better, or more effective.
a) Assemble b) Move c) Improve d) Design
- 7 Every invention begins with a/an
a) object b) idea c) color d) tool
- 8 Engineers new machines to help people. Super Question ?
a) wash b) speak c) close d) design

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

invention – create – model – engineer – works



An engineer starts with a simple idea that can solve a problem. The engineer thinks about how to (1)..... something new that people can use. He designs a (2)..... to show what the invention will look like. After that, they test the model to see if it (3)..... well. Step by step, the engineer turns the idea into a real (4)..... .

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:



1 improve – They – the – every – design – week.

2 use – machine – How – do – we – this?

3 engineer – talented – We – a – young – have.

4 The – sunlight – quickly – moves – in – gadget.

5 Punctuate the following:



1 who invented this solar robot

2 hamza shared a new idea

3 My friend and i designed a simple robot in class

4 let's get started

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“My helpful gadget”

What is your helpful gadget? – What does the gadget do?





Lesson 2

The Egyptian Loom



Listen, point, and say:

استمع أشر، وقل:

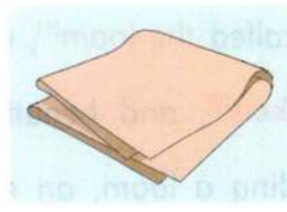
Main vocabulary



fabric
قماش



threads
خيوط



linen
كتان



wooden
خشبي

Extra vocabulary

ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	loom	نول (جهاز يستخدم في نسج الأقمشة)	blankets	بطانيات
skilled worker	عامل ماهر	crafting tools	أدوات الحرف اليدوية	pieces	أجزاء
ready (adj)	جاهز	process	عملية	cloth	قماش
creativity	الإبداع	still	مازال	modern (adj)	حديث

Expressions and Phrases

thousands of years ago	قبل آلاف السنين	move ... up and down	يحرك شيئاً أعلى وأسفل
------------------------	-----------------	----------------------	-----------------------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs				أفعال منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
call	called	train	trained	يدعى / يُسمى	يتدرب	يستخدم	يستخدم
need	needed	use	used	يحتاج	يستخدم	يلهم	يلهم
produce	produced	inspire	inspired	ينتج	يستخدم	يلهم	يلهم
Irregular verbs				أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
build	built	draw	drew	يبني	يرسم		
stand	stood			يقف			



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

How do you think the clothes you wear were made?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Thousands of years ago, the ancient Egyptians created an amazing invention called **the loom**⁽¹⁾, which helped them make clothes, **blankets**⁽²⁾, and beautiful **fabrics**⁽³⁾ from **linen**⁽⁴⁾. Before building a loom, an engineer or **skilled worker**⁽⁵⁾, who was trained in crafting tools, would draw a blueprint to show the size, shape, and parts needed. Then, the workers would assemble the **wooden**⁽⁶⁾ pieces carefully so the loom, which needed to stand strong, could work well.



Once it was ready, people used the loom to build fabric by moving **threads**⁽⁷⁾ up and down, a process that needed a lot of skills. The Egyptian loom made it **possible**⁽⁸⁾ to produce fine, colorful cloth which showed the **creativity**⁽⁹⁾ of ancient Egypt. Today, this ancient invention still **inspires**⁽¹⁰⁾ modern machines that make our clothes.

- | | |
|------|----------------------------------|
| (1) | نول (جهاز مستخدم في نسج الأقمشة) |
| (2) | بطانيات |
| (3) | أقمشة |
| (4) | كتان |
| (5) | عامل ماهر |
| (6) | خشب |
| (7) | خيوط |
| (8) | ممكن |
| (9) | الابداع |
| (10) | يلهم |

Think

Why do you think the Egyptian loom was an important invention?

قبل آلاف السنين، ابتكر المصريون القدماء اختراعاً رائعاً يُسمى النول، والذي ساعدهم على صنع الملابس والبطانيات والأقمشة الجميلة من الكتان. قبل بناء النول، كان المهندس أو العامل الماهر المدرب على صناعة الأدوات يرسم مخططاً يوضح الحجم والشكل والأجزاء المطلوبة، ثم يقوم العمال بتجميع القطع الخشبية بعناية حتى يصبح النول الذي يحتاج إلى أن يكون قوياً، قادراً على العمل بشكل جيد. وبمجرد أن يصبح جاهزاً، كان الناس يستخدمون النول لصنع القماش عبر تحريك الخيوط لأعلى ولأسفل، وهي عملية تتطلب الكثير من المهارات. وقد جعل النول المصري من الممكن إنتاج أقمشة ناعمة وملونة تُظهر إبداع مصر القديمة. واليوم، لا يزال هذا الاختراع القديم يلهم الآلات الحديثة التي تصنع ملابسنا.

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

The Main Ideas of the Text:

- ✓ Thousands of years ago, the ancient Egyptians invented the loom.
- قبل آلاف السنين، اخترع المصريون القدماء النول.
- ✓ The loom helped them make clothes, blankets, and fabrics from linen.
- ساعدهم النول في صناعة الملابس والبطانيات والأقمشة من الكتان.
- ✓ Before building a loom, an engineer or skilled worker drew a blueprint.
- قبل بناء النول، كان المهندس أو العامل الماهر يرسم المخطط.
- ✓ The blueprint showed the size, shape, and parts needed for the loom.
- كان المخطط يوضح الحجم والشكل والأجزاء المطلوبة لصنع النول.
- ✓ Workers carefully assembled the wooden pieces of the loom.
- قام العمال بتجميع القطع الخشبية للنول بعناية.
- ✓ The loom needed to be strong to work properly.
- كان يجب أن يكون النول قوياً ليعمل بشكل صحيح.
- ✓ People used the loom to build fabric by moving threads up and down.
- كان الناس يستخدمون النول لتكوين القماش عن طريق تحريك الخيوط لأعلى ولأسفل.
- ✓ The Egyptian loom inspired modern machines that produce clothes today.
- لقد ألهم النول المصري الآلات الحديثة التي تنتج الملابس اليوم.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Write (T) true or (F) false:

SB

- ① The loom helped the ancient Egyptians make clothes, blankets, and fabrics. (.....)
- ② Only farmers used the loom to produce fabric. (.....)
- ③ Engineers drew a blueprint before assembling the loom. (.....)
- ④ The process of using the loom required a lot of skills. (.....)
- ⑤ Modern machines are inspired by the ancient Egyptian loom. (.....)

2. Read again and answer:

SB

- ① What process did people use with the loom to make fabric?
.....
- ② Which part of the loom design showed the creativity of ancient Egyptians?
.....

Language in Use

Relative Pronouns ضمائر الوصل

Relative pronouns are words that join two sentences together.

ضمائر الوصل هي كلمات تربط بين جملتين معًا.

Relative Pronoun	Used for	Examples
who	people - the person doing an action تعود على الناس - الشخص الذي يقوم بفعل معين.	The engineer who designed the robot is smart. المهندس الذي صمم الروبوت ذكي.
whose	show possession تظهر الملكية	The student whose invention won was happy. الطالب الذي فاز اختراعه كان سعيدًا.
which	things and animals تعود على الأشياء أو الحيوانات "غير العاقل"	The solar robot which has wheels is a cool gadget. الروبوت الشمسي الذي يملك عجلات جهاز رائع.
that	things and ideas It adds information that is important. تعود على الأشياء والأفكار. إنها تضيف معلومات مهمة.	The gadget that I bought broke. الجهاز الذي اشتريته تعطل.

لاحظ الجمل الآتية:

- ① This is my father. My father is an engineer.
sentence
sentence

الاسم المكرر في الجملتين هو اسم عاقل **father** لذلك نستخدم ضمير الربط "**who**" وعند الربط بين الجملتين نحذف الاسم المكرر.

e.g. This is my father **who** is an engineer.

- ② The student was happy. His invention won.
sentence
sentence

الملكية هنا هي **invention** ويعبر عنها بكلمة **his** للربط بين جملتين نحذف **his** ونضيف **whose** بعد الفاعل مباشرة ويعدّها يأتي الشئ المملوك.

e.g. The student **whose** invention won was happy.

- ③ The ancient Egyptians created the loom. The loom helped them make clothes.
sentence
sentence

الاسم المكرر في الجملتين هو اسم غير عاقل **the loom** لذلك نستخدم ضمير الربط "**which**" وعند الربط بين الجملتين نحذف الاسم المكرر.

e.g. The ancient Egyptians created the loom **which** helped them make clothes.

- ④ I draw the blueprint. The blueprint shows the size and shape.
sentence
sentence

الاسم المكرر هو **blueprint** وهو غير عاقل لذلك نستخدم الضمير "**that**" وعند الربط بين الجملتين نحذف الاسم المكرر.

e.g. I draw the blueprint **that** shows the size and shape.

**Got it:**

My uncle is the man (which) sells flowers.

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (who) لأن الضمير يعود على فاعل عاقل.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① Mona's toy is the toy (who – which – when – where) makes a loud noise.
- ② Ali is the boy (whose – which – who – where) is wearing a red shirt.
- ③ The boy (where – which – when – whose) bike is red is my friend.
- ④ The Egyptian loom produced colorful cloth (whose – who – where – which) showed the creativity of ancient Egypt.
- ⑤ An engineer (whose – which – when – who) was trained in crafting tools, would draw a blue print.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① My uncle planted the tree (who) grows apples.
- ② Nader is the boy (which) started the project.
- ③ This is the house (that) windows are painted blue.
- ④ Mr. Moaz is the teacher (where) teaches us Arabic.
- ⑤ People used the loom to build fabric by moving threads up and down, a process (who) needed a lot of skills.

Quick Practice on Relative Pronouns

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The girl (whose) helped me is kind.
- 2 The machine (who) we used was new.
- 3 The model (who) they built looked real.
- 4 The boy (which) built the robot is smart.
- 5 The student (which) idea won smiled proudly.
- 6 The robot (whose) moves fast is mine.
- 7 The teacher (which) teaches us science is friendly.
- 8 The engineer (who) tools are missing is looking for them.
- 9 The student (whose) won the prize is happy.
- 10 The car (who) Hamza designed looks cool.
- 11 The engineer (whose) fixed the machine works here.
- 12 The gadget (who) I bought yesterday works well.
- 13 The machine (whose) cleans the floor is new.
- 14 The model (who) they made is strong.
- 15 The girl (that) cat is lost is very sad.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 who – The – beautifully – sings – girl – won.
.....
- 2 student – whose – project – The – won – celebrated.
.....
- 3 cat – The – you – that – slept – fed.
.....
- 4 The – rang – that – phone – lost – you.
.....
- 5 who – The – teaches – teacher – arrived – math.
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The ancient Egyptians invented the to make fabric.
a) car b) phone c) loom d) robot
- 2 Workers used the loom to create colorful
a) cloth b) toys c) dishes d) books
- 3 The museum we visited had old fabrics. SB
a) who b) which c) whose d) when
- 4 People made fabric by moving the up and down.
a) feathers b) threads c) sticks d) ropes
- 5 The loom helped the Egyptians make clothes from
a) paper b) linen c) leather d) rubber
- 6 The child toy is missing is crying. SB
a) who b) which c) whose d) that
- 7 The loom was made of pieces.
a) glass b) plastic c) cloth d) wooden
- 8 This is the loom helped them make clothes.
a) who b) that c) whose d) when

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

blueprint – invention – modern – clothes – threads

The ancient Egyptians made a great invention called the loom. They used it to make (1)....., blankets, and soft fabric from linen. First, a worker drew a (2)..... . Then, they put the wooden pieces together carefully. By moving the (3)..... up and down, they made beautiful cloth. This old (4)..... still helps us make clothes today.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The boy (whose) helped me smiled.
- 2 The driver (which) stopped quickly apologized.
- 3 The book (who) he read was interesting.
- 4 The teacher (which) the lesson is very clever.
- 5 The car (who) my dad bought is shiny.
- 6 The teacher (who) bag is missing is sad.
- 7 The robot (whose) broke yesterday was fixed.
- 8 The boy (which) won the race is fast.
- 9 The student (whose) helped us is very kind.
- 10 The movie (that) ending surprised everyone won an award.
- 11 The baby (whose) is crying needs help.
- 12 I have a dog (who) tail is short.
- 13 The engineer (whose) designed this bridge is smart.
- 14 The laptop (who) she uses is new.
- 15 The artist (which) painted this picture is famous.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 invented – Egyptians – useful – the – Ancient – loom.
.....
- 2 loom – inspired – The Egyptian – machines – modern.
.....
- 3 who – the loom – built – The engineer – was – smart.
.....
- 4 pieces – would – The workers – the wooden – assemble – carefully.
.....

Super Question ?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 who invented the loom
.....
- 2 egyptians showed creativity through their cloth
.....



Lesson 3

The Story of the First Clock



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



measure
يقيس



time
وقت



gear
ترس



pendulum
البندول



design
يصمم / تصميم



accurate (adj)
دقيق

Extra vocabulary

sand	رمل	clever (adj)	ماهر	inventors	مخترعون
clock	ساعة حائط	accurately	بدقة	second	ثانية
workshop	ورشة صيانة	famous (adj)	مشهور	fascinating (adj)	رائع / خلاب

Expressions and Phrases

long ago	منذ زمن بعيد	side to side	من جانب إلى آخر
full of	ملئ بـ	all over Europe	في كل أنحاء أوروبا

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
measure يقيس	measured	change يغير	changed
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
tell يخبر	told	can يستطيع	could

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

Why do you think it is important to measure time correctly?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Long ago, people used the sun and **sand**⁽¹⁾ to tell the time. Later, clever **inventors**⁽²⁾ built the first clock that used **gears**⁽³⁾ and a **pendulum**⁽⁴⁾. The pendulum, which moved slowly from **side to side**⁽⁵⁾, helped the clock keep time more accurately. One engineer, who studied how things move, designed a clock that could **measure**⁽⁶⁾ every **second**⁽⁷⁾. The **workshop**⁽⁸⁾ where he worked was full of tools and small gears. The clock, whose design was new and exciting, became famous all over Europe. It was one of the **fascinating**⁽⁹⁾ inventions that **changed**⁽¹⁰⁾ how people lived and worked every day.

(1)	رمل
(2)	مخترعون
(3)	تروس
(4)	بندول
(5)	جانب إلى آخر
(6)	يقيس
(7)	ثانية
(8)	ورشة
(9)	رائع/ خلاب
(10)	غير

Think

What inventions today help you manage your time?

منذ زمن بعيد، كان الناس يستخدمون الشمس والرمل لمعرفة الوقت. فيما بعد، قام مخترعون ماهرون ببناء أول ساعة تستخدم التروس والبندول. البندول، الذي يتحرك ببطء من جانب إلى آخر، ساعد الساعة على الحفاظ على الوقت بدقة أكبر. صمّم مهندس، كان يدرس حركة الأشياء، ساعة يمكنها قياس كل ثانية. كانت الورشة التي كان يعمل بها مليئة بالأدوات والتروس الصغيرة. أصبحت الساعة، التي كان تصميمها جديدًا ومثيرًا، مشهورة في جميع أنحاء أوروبا. وكانت واحدة من الاختراعات الرائعة التي غيّرت طريقة عيش الناس وعملهم يوميًا.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Long ago, people used the sun and sand to tell time.
- منذ زمن بعيد كان الناس يستخدمون الشمس والرمل لمعرفة الوقت.
- ✓ Later, inventors made the first clock with gears and a pendulum.
- وفي وقت لاحق، قام المخترعون بصنع أول ساعة تحتوي على تروس وبندول.
- ✓ The pendulum moved slowly and helped the clock tell time accurately.
- تحرك البندول ببطء وساعد الساعة على تحديد الوقت بشكل دقيق.
- ✓ An engineer designed a new clock that could measure every second.
- قام أحد المهندسين بتصميم ساعة جديدة يمكنها قياس كل ثانية.
- ✓ His workshop was filled with tools and small gears.
- كانت ورشته مليئة بالأدوات والتروس الصغيرة.
- ✓ The clock he created had a new and exciting design.
- كانت الساعة التي صنعها ذات تصميم جديد ومثير.
- ✓ The clock became famous all over Europe.
- وأصبحت الساعة مشهورة في كل أنحاء أوروبا.
- ✓ This invention changed how people lived and worked every day.
- لقد كان هذا الاختراع من الابتكارات التي غيّرت طريقة عيش الناس وعملهم كل يوم.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Read and write T (True) or F (False): SB

- ① People first used clocks to measure the sun and sand. (.....)
- ② The pendulum moved quickly from side to side. (.....)
- ③ The pendulum helped the clock keep time accurately. (.....)
- ④ The engineer designed a clock that could measure every second. (.....)
- ⑤ The clock's design became famous all over Europe. (.....)

2. Read again and answer: SB

- ① How did the pendulum help the clock work more accurately?
.....
- ② Why was the new clock an important invention?
.....



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

A prefix: is a small part we add to the beginning of a word.
It changes the meaning of the word and sometimes changes the sound when we say it.

هي جزء صغير نضيفه إلى بداية الكلمة. هي تغيّر معنى الكلمة وأحياناً تغيّر الصوت عند نطقها.

Prefix: "re-"**Meaning:** again or back

When we add "re-" to a word, it means to do something again.

Word		Meaning
rebuild	يعاد بناءه	build again
rewrite	يعيد الكتابة	write again
recycle	يعيد تدوير	use again
return	يعود	come back
reread	يعيد قراءة	read again
restart	يبدأ من جديد	start again

**Tip!**

When you say re-, make it sound like "ree" before a strong syllable (like in rebuild), but like "ri" before weak ones.

عندما تنطق السابقة re- اجعلها تُلفظ مثل (ree) قبل مقطع لفظي قوي (مثل كلمة rebuild)، ولكن تُلفظ مثل (ri) قبل المقاطع الضعيفة.

Prefix: "un-"**Meaning:** not or the opposite of

When we add "un-", we make the meaning negative.

Word		Meaning
unhappy	غير سعيد	not happy
unsafe	غير آمن	not safe
unfair	غير عادل	not fair
unlock	يفتح	open (opposite of lock)
unkind	غير طيب	not kind
unlucky	غير محظوظ	not lucky

**Tip!**

The stress usually stays on the **main word**, not on the prefix.

عادةً ما يبقى (التشديد في النطق) على الكلمة الأساسية، وليس على السابقة.

Example: unHAPpy stress on HAP, not UN.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A clever engineer a clock that could measure every second.
a) told b) could c) designed d) stood
- 2 The old clock shows the clearly.
a) color b) time c) noise d) smell
- 3 A small helps the clock move.
a) paint b) time c) pendulum d) gear
- 4 The teacher told the student to the lesson. He will write it again.
a) rebuild b) recycle c) return d) rewrite
- 5 If something is accurate, it is **SB**
a) wrong or broken b) made by hand
c) correct and exact d) very big

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Europe – clock – fascinating – workshop – gears

Clocks are very important for people everywhere. My father worked in a small

(1)..... where he made special clocks. This workshop is full of tools and small

(2)..... . His clocks were so good that he became famous all over (3)..... .

People loved looking at his work because it was (4)..... . Clocks are great

inventions that changed how people live.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Long ago, people used the sun and sand to tell the time. Later, clever inventors built the first clock that used gears and a pendulum. Clocks are very important in our daily life because they help us know the time. Without clocks, people would miss important things and feel lost. Clocks also help workers, teachers, and students follow their daily plans. Even small gadgets like watches and phones make life easier. Because of clocks, we can measure time well and keep our day going smoothly.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) clocks b) teachers c) plans d) students
- 2 The underlined word "pendulum" means a piece that moves
 a) very fast b) from side to side
 c) up and down d) in a line

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did people use long ago to tell the time?
- 4 Why would people feel lost without clocks?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 created – using – clocks – Inventors – gears.

- 2 the – Who – clock – built – first?

- 3 work – the – Where – engineer – did?

- 4 clocks – easier – daily – make – life – Accurate.

5 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"The amazing first clock"

clever inventors – gears and pendulum





Lessons 4 and 5

A visit to Aswan Dam



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

Aswan Dam	سد أسوان	structure	مبنى
stone	حجارة	supply	إمداد

Extra vocabulary

huge (adj)	ضخم	southern Egypt	جنوب مصر	flooding	فيضان
factories	مصانع	powerful (adj)	قوى	energy	طاقة
concrete	خرسانة	villages	قرى	electricity	كهرباء
pencil holder	حامل قلم رصاص	organized (adj)	منظم	separate (adj)	منفصل

Expressions and Phrases

made of	مصنوع من	all year	طول العام
---------	----------	----------	-----------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
generate	يولد	generated	يحمى
benefit	يُفيد	benefited	يغير
		protect	protected
		change	changed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
keep	يحفظ	kept	ينمو
		grow	grew



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

How can a dam help people and farms near a river?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

The Aswan Dam is a **huge structure**⁽¹⁾ in **southern**⁽²⁾ Egypt that helps people every day. It was built by engineers who wanted to stop the Nile from **flooding**⁽³⁾ and to **generate**⁽⁴⁾ **powerful**⁽⁵⁾ energy for homes and **factories**⁽⁶⁾. The dam, which is made of stone and **concrete**⁽⁷⁾, also keeps water that **farmers**⁽⁸⁾ use to grow **crops**⁽⁹⁾ all year. It helps protect villages that are near the river and gives Egypt a clean **supply of**⁽¹⁰⁾ **electricity**⁽¹¹⁾. The people who live around the dam **benefit**⁽¹²⁾ from its energy and water. The Aswan Dam is one of the great modern buildings that changed Egypt's future.

- | | |
|------|-----------|
| (1) | مبنى ضخم |
| (2) | جنوب |
| (3) | فيضان |
| (4) | يولد |
| (5) | قوى |
| (6) | مصانع |
| (7) | خرسانة |
| (8) | المزارعون |
| (9) | محاصيل |
| (10) | إمداد من |
| (11) | الكهرباء |
| (12) | يستفيد |

Think

1 How does the Aswan Dam help Egypt's future?

.....

2 Why do you think teamwork was important in building the dam?

.....

سد أسوان هو هيكل ضخم في جنوب مصر يساعد الناس يوميًا. تم بناؤه بواسطة المهندسين الذين أرادوا منع نهر النيل من الفيضان وتوليد طاقة قوية للمنازل والمصانع. السد مصنوع من الحجر والخرسانة، يحافظ أيضًا على المياه التي يستخدمها المزارعون لزراعة المحاصيل طوال العام. يساعد في حماية القرى القريبة من النهر ويمنح مصر إمدادًا نظيفًا من الكهرباء. الناس الذين يعيشون حول السد يستفيدون من طاقته ومياهه. سد أسوان هو واحد من المباني الحديثة العظيمة التي غيرت مستقبل مصر.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt.
- سد أسوان هو هيكل ضخم في جنوب مصر.
- ✓ It helps people in Egypt every day.
- يساعد الناس في مصر يوميًا.
- ✓ Engineers built the dam to stop the Nile from flooding.
- قام المهندسون ببناء السد لمنع نهر النيل من الفيضان.
- ✓ The dam generates powerful energy for homes and factories.
- يقوم السد بتوليد طاقة قوية للمنازل والمصانع.
- ✓ It is made of stone and concrete.
- السد مصنوع من الحجر والخرسانة.
- ✓ The dam stores water that farmers use to grow crops all year.
- يحتفظ السد بالمياه التي يستخدمها المزارعون لزراعة المحاصيل طوال العام.
- ✓ It protects villages near the river and provides a clean supply of electricity.
- يحمي القرى القريبة من النهر ويعطى مصر إمدادًا نظيفًا من الكهرباء.
- ✓ The Aswan Dam is one of the great modern buildings that changed Egypt's future.
- سد أسوان هو واحد من المباني الحديثة العظيمة التي غيرت مستقبل مصر.



Writing Tips!

Start with a problem: Your invention needs to fix something that's difficult or annoying.

ابدأ بمشكلة: يجب أن يخدم اختراعك حل شيء صعب أو مزعج.

Describe your idea: Tell us about your design and what your invention looks like.

صف فكرتك: أخبرنا عن تصميمك وكيف يبدو اختراعك.

Explain how it helps: Say what your invention does and how it will improve things.

اشرح كيف يساعد: اذكر ما يفعله اختراعك وكيف سيحسن الأمور.

Use keywords: Remember to use the vocabulary, like tool and design.

استخدم الكلمات الرئيسية: تذكر استخدام المفردات، مثل أداة (tool) وتصميم (design).

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Goal:

To help students keep their pencils, pens, and erasers organized on their desks.

الهدف: مساعدة الطلاب على الحفاظ على تنظيم أقلامهم الرصاص والأقلام الجاف والممحيات على مكاتبهم.



1. Plan your idea:

خطط لفكرتك:

Draw a simple sketch of a pencil holder with separate sections for pens, pencils, and erasers.

ارسم رسماً بسيطاً لحامل أقلام مع أقسام منفصلة للأقلام الجاف، أقلام الرصاص، والممحيات.

2. Collect your materials:

أجمع المواد الخاصة بك:

Use recycled boxes, cups, or small containers.

استخدم صناديق معاد تدويرها، أكواب، أو حاويات صغيرة.

3. Build your gadget:

أصنع أدايتك:

Cut, tape, or glue the containers together to make your holder.

قص، أو لصق، أو ثبت الحاويات معاً لصنع الحامل الخاص بك.

4. Practice:

تدرب:

Explain how it keeps your desk tidy and helps you find your supplies easily.

اشرح كيف يساعد الحامل في الحفاظ على ترتيب مكتبك وكيف يسهل عليك إيجاد مستلزماتك بسهولة.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Aswan was built to stop the Nile from flooding.
a) Dam b) village c) boat d) park
- 2 The river's damaged many homes.
a) flooding b) cooking c) reading d) drawing
- 3 The Aswan Dam gives Egypt a clean of electricity.
a) supply b) structure c) concrete d) stone
- 4 The dam generates for many homes.
a) powerful energy b) soft water
c) cold air d) dry sand
- 5 Many use the electricity from the dam.
a) factories b) gardens c) beaches d) mountains
- 6 Workers used to make some parts of the dam.
a) stone b) paper c) fabric d) plastic
- 7 The dam is made of strong
a) concrete b) cotton c) sugar d) gold
- 8 The dam helps villages from high water.
a) protect b) paint c) shout d) jump

Super Question ?

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

keeps – flooding – benefit – electricity – modern

The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt that helps people every day. The people who live around the dam (1)..... from its energy and water. The Aswan Dam is one of the greatest (2)..... buildings that changed Egypt's future. It protects Egypt from flooding and (3)..... the water safe for use. It also provides (4)..... for homes, schools, and factories across the country.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Our class went on an exciting school trip to the Aswan Dam last week. When we arrived, the guide told us how the dam protects Egypt from flooding and stores water for the whole country. We walked along the huge structure and saw the big machines that make electricity. Everyone was amazed at how powerful the water looked. We took pictures, asked questions, and learned many new facts. The trip helped us understand why the Aswan Dam is important. It was one of the best school trips we ever had.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "amazed" means
 a) very surprised b) very tired
 c) very slow d) very angry
- 2 The trip helped the students understand why the Aswan Dam is
 a) boring b) new c) important d) small

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did the class go on their school trip?
- 4 Who explained how the dam works?
- 5 What does the dam protect Egypt from?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 get – do – people – electricity – clean – How?

- 2 the – built – for – dam – Engineers – safety.

- 3 flooding – Nile – dam – stops – the – The – from.

- 4 use – Farmers – the – water – stored.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 the dam changed egypt's modern future.

- 2 The aswan Dam is very important

- 3 the structure helps people every day

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Aswan Dam"

Why was the dam built? – How does the dam help Egypt?

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 2

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

invention	اختراع	gadgets	أجهزة صغيرة
blueprint	مخطط	tools	أدوات
assemble	يجمع	improve	يُحسن
talented	موهوب	solar robot	روبوت شمسي
engineer	مهندس	step	خطوة
machine	آلة	detailed	تفصيلي
solar power	طاقة شمسية	wheels	عجل (إطارات)

Lesson (2)

fabric	قماش	threads	خيوط
linen	كتان	wooden	خشبي
ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	loom	نول (جهاز يستخدم في نسج الأقمشة)
blankets	بطانيات	pieces	أجزاء
process	عملية	cloth	قماش
creativity	الإبداع	modern	حديث

Lesson (3)

measure	يقيس	time	وقت
gear	ترس	pendulum	البندول
design	يصمم / تصميم	accurate	دقيق
sand	رمل	clever	ماهر
inventors	مخترعين	accurately	بدقة
second	ثانية	workshop	ورشة صيانة

Lessons (4 and 5)

Aswan Dam	سد أسوان	huge	ضخم
structure	مبنى	southern	جنوب
flooding	الفيضان	energy	طاقة
powerful	قوى	electricity	كهرباء
villages	قرى	buildings	مباني
benefit	يفيد	concrete	خرسانة
factories	مصانع	organized	منظم

Language in Use

Relative Pronouns

Relative pronouns are words that join two sentences together.

ضمائر الوصل هي كلمات تربط بين جملتين معًا.

who	is used for people - the person doing an action. يستخدم للأشخاص - الشخص الذي يقوم بعمل ما. <i>e.g.</i> The engineer who designed the robot is smart.
whose	is used to show possession. يتم استخدامه لإظهار الملكية. <i>e.g.</i> The student whose invention won was happy.
which	is used for things and animals. يستخدم للأشياء والحيوانات. <i>e.g.</i> The solar robot which has wheels is a cool gadget.
that	is used for things and ideas. It adds information that is important. يُستخدم للأشياء والأفكار. يُضيف معلومات مهمة. <i>e.g.</i> The gadget that I bought broke.

Unit 2

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
talented	أجهزة صغيرة
engineer	يجمع
invention	بسهولة
blueprint	الطاقة الشمسية
tools	تفصيلي
improve	افكار

Lesson 2

loom	كتان
fabric	خشبي
threads	حديث
blankets	جاهز
process	قماش
creativity	عامل

Lesson 3

measure	وقت
design	دقيق
pendulum	ترس
inventors	ثانية
workshop	ساعة حائط
sand	مشهور

Lessons 4 and 5

factories	جنوب
stone	فيضان
supply	يولد
future	خرسانة
containers	يحمي
explanation	يُفيد

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present

.....
inspire
.....
tell
.....

Past

created

improved

ran on

Present

measure

generate

explore

Past

moved

could



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about "The Egyptian loom":

- o تعريفه + The Egyptian loom is
- o مكان وجوده + It is found in
- o استخداماته + People use it to
- o Visitors learn about our Egyptian crafts.

"The Egyptian loom"

The Egyptian loom is a traditional tool used in Egypt. It is found in villages and craft workshops. It has wooden parts. People use it to make carpets and beautiful fabrics. The loom has a strong frame that helps weavers work by hand. Visitors learn about our Egyptian crafts and how people make colorful clothes.

How to write about "My father works as an engineer":

- o المهنة + My father is an
- o سبب تميزه + He is a brilliant engineer who
- o مكان العمل + He works in
- o كيف يساعد المجتمع من خلال عمله + He helps people by
- o سبب إعجابك به + I admire him because

"My father works as an engineer"

My father is an engineer. He is a brilliant engineer who designs and builds important projects. He works in a big company and helps people by making safe and useful buildings. He is hardworking and always solves problems. I admire him because he is smart, kind, and helps our community.

1 Write the correct word for each definition:

tools – gadget – blueprint – assemble – invention – improve

- 1 Detailed plan or drawing for making something
- 2 To put parts together to make a whole
- 3 To make something better, or more effective
- 4 Things used to fix, build, or create things
- 5 A new idea, product, or method created for the first time
- 6 A small, useful device or tool

2 Read each sentence, underline the wrong relative pronoun and correct it:

- 1 The toothbrush who we bought yesterday was very cheap.
.....
- 2 The engineer who invention won at the competition was very happy.
.....
- 3 The invention who changed the way people made clothes was the loom.
.....
- 4 The tool who the workers used was made of wood.
.....

3 Read, sort, and write:

read – cycle – happy – turn – lock – kind – start – lucky – write

re- words	un- words



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The Aswan Dam is located in southern Egypt. (.....)
- 2 It is made of wood and plastic. (.....)
- 3 It produces energy for homes and factories. (.....)
- 4 It doesn't help people in Egypt. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 One engineer, studied how things move, designed a clock.
a) which b) whose c) who d) where
- 2 The small metal helps the clock move.
a) sand b) design c) gear d) second
- 3 The loom was made of pieces.
a) wooden b) plastic c) silver d) rubber
- 4 The computer I bought broke.
a) who b) where c) when d) that

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

measure – inventor – workshop – idea – design

Long ago, inventors wanted to make a clock that could measure time better. They worked together to (1)..... a simple and useful clock. One (2)..... used a pendulum that moved from side to side to help the clock stay steady. This new (3)..... made the clock more accurate. Because of these inventors, people could finally (4)..... time easily and know the right time every day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Engineers are people who solve problems and help make our lives easier. They design machines, buildings, roads, and many important inventions we use every day. Engineers draw plans, choose the right materials, and use tools to build things safely. Some engineers work with electricity, while others work with computers or big structures like bridges and dams. They must think carefully and check their work to make sure everything is correct. Engineers also try new ideas to improve their designs. Their hard work helps our world grow, change, and become better for everyone.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Engineers problems to help people.
a) create b) solve c) hide d) drop
- 2 Engineers design to make life easier.
a) machines b) apples c) songs d) shoes

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How do engineers build things safely?
- 4 How do engineers improve their designs?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 The girl (which) lives next door is my friend.
- 2 The bike (whose) I borrowed was very fast.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 do – draw – blueprint – engineers – a – Why?
.....
- 2 day – help – people – Small – every – gadgets.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 this tool is very effective today
.....
- 2 The clock became famous in europe
.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

“How ancient Egyptians made cloth”

used threads to – used the loom





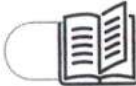
Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Engineers use tools in their workshops to build and fix machines. (.....)
- 2 Sometimes engineers assemble small parts to make useful gadgets. (.....)
- 3 Engineers do not need to test their inventions. (.....)
- 4 Engineers keep detailed notes to help improve their designs in the future. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 His clocks became all over Europe.
a) broken b) famous c) quiet d) empty
- 2 People used to make strong clothes.
a) linen b) butter c) salt d) paper
- 3 The clock was one of the fascinating inventions changed how people lived and worked every day.
a) who b) which c) whose d) when
- 4 Engineers improve ideas results benefit people.
a) who b) that c) which d) whose

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

hard – carpet – solar power – fascinating – invent

A young inventor drew a blueprint for a new flying machine. He imagined a flying (1)..... that could move through the sky. To make it work, he wanted to use (2)..... so the carpet could fly using the sun's energy. His idea was (3)....., and many people were excited to see if it could come true. He worked (4)..... to make his idea work.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

The Egyptians built the Aswan Dam to help the country and solve many problems. Long ago, the Nile River flooded every year and *destroyed houses and farms. People needed a way to stop the water from *causing damage. Engineers built the dam to control the floods and keep everyone safe. They also wanted to save water so farmers could grow their crops in all seasons. Another reason for building the dam was to make clean electricity for homes and factories. The Aswan Dam helped Egypt become safer and stronger.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 People needed the dam to save for farming.
a) water b) stones c) paint d) metal
- 2 The dam was built by Egyptian
a) drivers b) engineers c) singers d) builders

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why did the Egyptians build the Aswan Dam?
- 4 What does the dam provide for homes and factories?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 The boy (which) dog ran away was very sad.
- 2 The story (who) she told us was funny.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 made – is – the – What – of – dam?
.....
- 2 helpful – She – gadget – bought – a – new.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 which villages are protected by the dam
.....
- 2 people used the sun and sand to tell the time
.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

“My amazing invention”

simple tools – useful



.....

.....

.....

.....

A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

concrete – damage – structure – generate – Aswan – flooding

Sarah : Have you heard about the (1)..... Dam in southern Egypt?

Asmaa : Yes! It's a huge (2)..... that protects people from (3).....

Sarah : That's right. It also helps (4)..... powerful energy for homes and factories.

Asmaa : I learned that the dam is made of strong (5).....

Sarah : Yes, and it's one of Egypt's most important projects.

B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- The doctor (whose) helped my brother is so smart.
- The house (who) we visited is very old.
- The boy (that) sister is a singer won the prize.
- The phone (whose) rings loudly is mine.
- The driver (which) works at night is tired.

3 Choose the correct answer:

- The movie (which – who – whose) we saw yesterday was funny.
- The girl (who – that – whose) bag is blue is in my class.
- The robot (that – whose – who) can talk is amazing.
- The teacher (whose – who – which) teaches us math is helpful.
- The pen (which – who – whose) he lost was red.
- People think old clocks are (noisy – boring – fascinating).
- The Aswan Dam gives Egypt clean (energy – damage – solar).
- Workers used special (looms – tools – blankets) to fix the old robot.
- Clothes in ancient Egypt were often made from (metal – glass – linen).
- Farida tried to (improve – read – speak) her model to make it work better.

C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

- loom – threads – fabric – flood
- stone – dam – concrete – linen
- fabric – clothes – time – blanket
- protect – assemble – inventor – create
- wooden – linen – fabric – computer

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Time helps us know when things happen. Long ago, people looked at the sun to tell the time. Then, inventors made the first clocks to measure hours and minutes. These clocks had simple gears that moved slowly. Today, we use watches, phones, and digital clocks to check the time quickly. Time helps us wake up, go to school, eat meals, and do our work. It also helps us plan our day and finish tasks. Knowing the time is important because it keeps our lives organized and easy to manage.

A Write "True" or "False":

- People long ago used the sun to tell the time.
- Today, people only use phones to check the time.
- Time helps us plan our day.

B Choose the correct answer:

- The first clocks were made with simple (gears – books – lights).
- Knowing the time is important because it helps us (keep – organize – move) our lives.

D) Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE sentences:
"The Egyptian loom"

ancient – threads – linen – fabric – inspire

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A is a tool artists use to put paint on a picture.
a) sketch b) paintbrush c) pottery d) surface
- 2 A flat board artists use to mix colors is called
a) canvas b) whisper c) loom d) palette
- 3 Karim saw a small he made as a university student before working on big artworks.
a) statue b) canvas c) sketch d) palette
- 4 To means to cut or shape wood or stone to make art.
a) whisper b) carve c) sketch d) paint
- 5 Inside a frame, there can be a painting or a photograph.
a) neither b) both c) either d) and
- 6 Everyone said the painting was a because it looked amazing.
a) pottery b) whisper c) masterpiece d) canvas
- 7 The guide spoke in a inside the art gallery.
a) wood b) carve c) sketch d) whisper
- 8 The students drew a quick wall before painting the mural.
a) sketch b) paintbrush c) palette d) sculpture
- 9 My cat is sad nor happy. It's calm.
a) both b) neither c) either d) and
- 10 The artist used clay to make beautiful
a) pottery b) whisper c) incredible d) loom

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

carve – canvas – whisper – tools – palette

I love visiting the art room at school. It has many colors and (1)..... for painting. I choose my favorite colors from the (2)..... and mix them carefully. Then, I start painting on a big (3) to make my artwork look beautiful. Sometimes, the teacher speaks to us in a (4)..... so we can focus on our drawings.

B

sculpture – palette – carve – masterpieces – stone

In the art class, we learned how artists make statues from (1)..... or wood. First, they choose the material they want to (2)..... carefully. After many hours of work, the artist finally creates a beautiful (3)..... . Not every artwork is famous, but some become (4)..... that everyone can remember forever.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I like (neither) tea and coffee. I drink both every morning.
- 2 They like (both) swimming nor running. They hate sports.
- 3 We will visit (neither) the museum or the park. It depends on the time.
- 4 She plays (neither) tennis and volleyball. She enjoys sports.
- 5 He reads (either) comics no magazines. He is busy.
- 6 The cat likes (neither) milk and water. It drinks both.
- 7 They bought (neither) chairs and tables. They needed furniture.
- 8 She likes (either) tea nor coffee. She prefers juice.
- 9 He invited (either) John nor Peter. They stayed home.
- 10 You can travel (neither) by plane or by train. Both are possible.

4 Put the word in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 masterpiece – That – painting – is – a real.
.....
- 2 yesterday – We – the – new – visited – art gallery.
.....
- 3 palette – were – Colors – mixed – carefully – on the.
.....
- 4 masterpiece – painting – Why – is – this – a?
.....
- 5 Which – use – should – I – paintbrush – now?
.....

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The old stopped working because one gear was broken.
a) fabric b) model c) machine d) linen
- 2 The carpenter used special to fix the wooden table.
a) tools b) threads c) cloth d) idea
- 3 They will the robot parts together tomorrow.
a) measure b) protect c) assemble d) supply
- 4 This is the tool we use to make clothes.
a) that b) where c) whose d) who
- 5 The museum we visited had old paintings.
a) who b) whose c) when d) which
- 6 A detailed plan or drawing for making something is called a/an
a) gadget b) blueprint c) tool d) invention
- 7 She had a brilliant for a new invention.
a) idea b) pendulum c) supply d) measure
- 8 The designer tried to the old model and make it better.
a) thread b) protect c) supply d) improve

- 9 The moves from side to side inside the old clock.
 a) loom b) pendulum c) fabric d) workshop
- 10 You can your writing by correcting your mistakes.
 a) improve b) assemble c) invent d) put

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

concrete – energy – engineers – changed – fixed

The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt that helps people every day. It was built by (1)..... who wanted to stop the Nile from flooding and to generate powerful (2)..... for homes and factories. The dam, which is made of stone and (3)....., also keeps water that farmers use to grow crops all year. The Aswan Dam is one of the great modern buildings that (4)..... Egypt's future.

B

teamwork – build – blueprint – machine – tools

Last week, an engineer came to our school. He showed us how to (1)..... a small robot. The first step was designing a detailed (2)..... . We used many (3)..... carefully to make it work. Finally, everyone saw the (4)..... start moving.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The engineer (which) designed the machine is very talented.
- 2 The workshop (who) we visited had many tools.
- 3 The inventor (that) idea won the prize is happy.
- 4 This is the machine (whose) we use to make fabrics.
- 5 The loom (whose) I saw yesterday is old.
- 6 The tailor (that) made the pants is very skilled.
- 7 The blueprint (whose) they followed was very detailed.
- 8 The pendulum (who) moves slowly controls the clock.
- 9 The students (which) model won the competition are proud.
- 10 The engineer (whose) works here can fix any machine.

4 Put the word in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 chair – you – the – Can – broken – fix?

- 2 painting – wants – He – create – a – to.

- 3 yesterday – shared – brilliant – a – idea – She.

- 4 measure – you – How – the – table – do?

- 5 located – is – workshop – Where – the?

Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 He used a soft for details.
a) paintbrush b) thread c) sculpture d) pendulum
- 2 My school is clean and near my house.
a) neither b) both c) either d) nor
- 3 The tailor used soft to make the dress.
a) linen b) gear c) model d) innovation
- 4 The teacher we interviewed shared many helpful ideas.
a) who b) which c) whose d) where
- 5 The new student is very at drawing animals.
a) talented b) create c) engineer d) loom

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My parents like (both) jazz nor rock music. They hate both.
- 2 The artist (which) designed the mural is very famous.
- 3 The new robot (whose) students made worked perfectly.
- 4 The teacher (whose) teaches in my school is very helpful.
- 5 We can eat (neither) pizza or burger. Both are available.
- 6 The children want (neither) cake and ice cream. They enjoy both.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 palette – Where – color – is – the?
.....
- 2 feels – This – smooth – soft – and – linen.
.....
- 3 wooden – He – small – a – box – made.
.....
- 4 We – a beautiful – today – sculpture – saw.
.....
- 5 tomorrow – The – will – the – carve – wood – artist.
.....

Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The team followed the carefully to complete the project.
a) blueprint b) threads c) supply d) loom
- 2 I lost the pen you gave me.
a) that b) who c) whose d) where
- 3 They must the broken chairs before the event.
a) weave b) fix c) protect d) measure
- 4 I have a book is very easy to read.
a) who b) whose c) which d) when
- 5 My art teacher is helpful and creative.
a) both b) and c) neither d) either
- 6 The school wall has a beautiful that shows our Egyptian history.
a) workshop b) mural c) fabric d) tools

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

paintbrush – mural – colors – masterpiece – talented

I love art. In the art class today, we learned how to mix (1)..... using the palette. The teacher gave each student a new (2)..... to start their painting. One girl in the class is very (3)....., and she created a beautiful picture. Everyone said her artwork looked like a real (4)..... .

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The workshop (who) we visited has many sewing machines.
- 2 The tailor (which) threads are colorful is very creative.
- 3 He likes (neither) math and science. He is very clever.
- 4 The students (who) model impressed the teacher are happy.
- 5 I will visit (either) London nor Paris. I hate both cities.



1 Read and complete the dialog:

blueprint – run – invented – work – tools – engineers

Malek: Hi, Hamza! Yesterday I met a talented engineer.

Hamza: Wow! Did he tell you how he (1)..... the robot?

Malek: Yes, he said the first step was designing a (2).....

Hamza: And how did it (3).....?

Malek: He assembled the small parts using the right (4).....

Hamza: Did this robot (5)..... on solar power?

Malek: Yes, it's amazing.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

1	whisper	carve	see	masterpiece	.....
2	robot	fabric	linen	threads	.....
3	design	tell	pendulum	measure	.....
4	visitors	modern	old	famous	.....
5	took	drew	felt	point	.....

3 Choose the correct answer:

- I will visit (**either** – both – **neither**) London or Paris. I love both cities.
- This is the tool (**whose** – **which** – **who**) they used to make clothes.
- A (**palette** – **sculpture** – **paintbrush**) is a piece of art made by shaping stone, wood, or metal.
- She showed great (**carefulness** – **time** – **threads**) while working with sharp tools.
- The engineer (**whose** – **which** – **who**) built the loom was very clever.
- A (**gadget** – **blueprint** – **drawing**) is a small, useful device or tool.



MODULE 2

Unit 3: Hidden Gems of Egypt

Unit 4: Egypt on the Move



Learning Outcomes

● By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- show understanding of short talks and conversations about Egyptian landmarks and history.
- يظهر فهمًا للأحاديث والمحادثات القصيرة عن معالم وتاريخ مصر.
- recognize key vocabulary related to archaeology, temples, and monuments in listening tasks.
- يميز المفردات الأساسية المتعلقة بعلم الآثار والمعابد والآثار أثناء مهام الاستماع.

Speaking:

- use common vocabulary related to ancient sites, history, and heritage.
- يستخدم مفردات شائعة تتعلق بالمواقع الأثرية والتاريخ والتراث.
- ask and answer questions about Egyptian monuments, tombs, and temples in short discussions.
- يسأل ويجيب عن الأسئلة المتعلقة بالآثار والمقابر والمعابد المصرية في مناقشات قصيرة.
- express opinions and feelings about visiting historical places using simple sentences.
- يعبر عن آرائه ومشاعره حول زيارة الأماكن التاريخية باستخدام جمل بسيطة.

Reading:

- recognize and understand vocabulary related to archaeology, temples, tombs, and fossils.
- يتعرف ويفهم المفردات المتعلقة بعلم الآثار والمعابد والمقابر والحفريات.
- answer comprehension questions about informational texts describing ancient Egyptian sites.
- يجيب عن أسئلة الفهم حول النصوص المعلوماتية التي تصف المواقع المصرية القديمة.
- identify main ideas and supporting details in short reading passages.
- يحدد الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل الداعمة في فقرات القراءة القصيرة.

Writing:

- write short, correct sentences using vocabulary about Egypt's hidden treasures.
- يكتب جملًا قصيرة صحيحة باستخدام مفردات عن كنوز مصر الخفية.
- write short paragraphs or blog entries describing a historical place, visit, or discovery.
- يكتب فقرات قصيرة أو مقالات مدونة تصف مكانًا تاريخيًا أو زيارة أو اكتشافًا.
- use the present perfect tense correctly to describe past events with present results.
- يستخدم زمن المضارع التام بشكل صحيح لوصف أحداث في الماضي لها نتائج في الحاضر.



Lesson 1

The Enchanting Tuna el-Gebel



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



burial

الدفن / الطقوس الجنائزية



archaeologist

عالم آثار



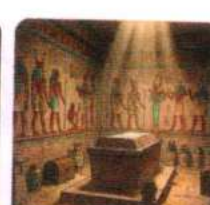
mummy

مومياء



discovery

اكتشاف



chamber

حجرة / غرفة



mystery

لغز / شيء غامض

Extra vocabulary

desert	صحراء	mysterious (adj)	غامض	site	موقع
amazed (adj)	مدهش	underground	تحت الأرض	corridors	ممرات
ancient (adj)	قديم	art	فن	researchers	باحثون
preserved birds	الطيور المحنطة	priest	كاهن / راهب	tomb	مقبرة
carvings	منقوشات	scenes	مناظر / مشاهد	Greek (adj)	يوناني
styles	أساليب	unforgettable (adj)	لا يُنسى	heritage	تراث

Expressions and Phrases

famous for	مشهور بـ	filled with	مملوء بـ	in the middle of	في وسط
be covered with	مغطى بـ	the tomb of Petosiris	مقبرة بيتوسيريس	walk through	يمشي خلال / عبر
feel like	يشعر وكأنه	travel back in time	يعود بالزمن إلى الوراء	proud of	فخور بـ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
include	included	included	create	created	created
continue	continued	continued	fascinate	fascinated	fascinated

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
make	made	made	feel	felt	felt

Tuna el-Gebel

قرية تونة الجبل



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

In the desert near Minya lies Tuna el-Gebel, a mysterious **burial**⁽¹⁾ site that has amazed **archaeologists**⁽²⁾ for years. The area is famous for its underground **chambers**⁽³⁾ and long corridors filled with ancient art. Researchers made many exciting discoveries, including hundreds of **mummies**⁽⁴⁾ of animals, especially preserved birds.

In the middle of the site stands the **tomb of Petosiris**⁽⁵⁾, a high **priest**⁽⁶⁾ who lived more than two thousand years ago. His tomb walls are covered with beautiful carvings and colorful scenes that show both Egyptian and Greek styles. The mystery of how **ancient Egyptians**⁽⁷⁾ created such wonderful tombs and preserved animals continues to fascinate visitors.

Walking through Tuna el-Gebel, people feel like they have traveled back in time. The quiet desert, the carvings, and the smell of history make the place unforgettable. Seeing these ancient burial chambers and mummies helps every Egyptian feel proud of their country's rich **heritage**⁽⁸⁾.

- | | |
|-----|------------------|
| (1) | الدَّفْن |
| (2) | علماء آثار |
| (3) | حجرات |
| (4) | مومياوات |
| (5) | مقبرة بيتوسيريس |
| (6) | كاهن/ راهب |
| (7) | المصريون القدماء |
| (8) | تراث |

Think

Which part of Tuna el-Gebel do you find most interesting: the tombs, the carvings, or the mummies? Why?

.....

في الصحراء القريبة من المنيا تقع تونة الجبل، وهي منطقة دفن غامضة أدهشت علماء الآثار لسنوات. تشتهر المنطقة بغرفها تحت الأرض وممراتها الطويلة المليئة بالفن القديم. وقد قام الباحثون بالعديد من الاكتشافات المثيرة، بما في ذلك مئات المومياوات الخاصة بالحيوانات، وخاصة الطيور المحنطة. وفي وسط الموقع تقع مقبرة بيتوسيريس، وهو كاهن كبير عاش منذ أكثر من ألفي عام. جدران مقبرته مغطاة بنقوش جميلة ومشاهد ملونة تجمع بين الأسلوبين المصري واليوناني. ولا يزال لغز كيف صنع المصريون القدماء مثل هذه المقابر الرائعة وحفظوا الحيوانات يثير دهشة الزوار. عند التجول في تونة الجبل، يشعر الناس وكأنهم عادوا بالزمن إلى الوراء. فالصحراء الهادئة، والنقوش، ورائحة التاريخ تجعل المكان لا يُنسى. ومشاهدة غرف الدفن القديمة والمومياوات تجعل كل مصري يشعر بالفخر بتراث بلاده الغني.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Tuna el-Gebel is a mysterious burial site near Minya.

تونة الجبل موقع دفن غامض بالقرب من المنيا.

- ✓ The area is famous for its underground chambers and long corridors.

المنطقة مشهورة بغرفها تحت الأرض وممراتها الطويلة.

- ✓ Archaeologists discovered hundreds of animal mummies, especially birds.

اكتشف علماء الآثار مئات المومياوات الحيوانية، خاصة مومياوات الطيور.

- ✓ The tomb of Petosiris shows Egyptian and Greek art styles.

تعرض مقبرة بيتوسيريس أسلوب الفن المصري واليوناني.

- ✓ The place still keeps many mysteries about ancient Egyptian burials.

لا يزال المكان يحتفظ بالعديد من الأسرار عن دفن المصريين القدماء.

- ✓ Visitors feel like they travel back in time when they walk through the site.

يشعر الزوار وكأنهم يعودون بالزمن إلى الوراء عندما يسرون داخل الموقع.

- ✓ Tuna el-Gebel makes Egyptians proud of their rich heritage.

تجعل تونة الجبل المصريين فخوريين بتراثهم الغني.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

SB

- ① Tuna el-Gebel is a famous burial site located near Minya. (.....)
- ② Archaeologists discovered hundreds of preserved animals at the site. (.....)
- ③ The tomb of Petosiris shows only Egyptian artistic styles. (.....)
- ④ The chambers and carvings at Tuna el-Gebel are still mysterious to researchers. (.....)

2. Fill in the blanks using the words from the box:

SB

burial – archaeologist – mummy – discovery – chamber

- ① An studies ancient places and old objects.
- ② A is a body that has been preserved for thousands of years.
- ③ A is a special room inside a tomb.
- ④ A new of ancient tombs made scientists very excited.
- ⑤ Tuna el-Gebel is a site filled with history and secrets.



Lesson 1

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Tuna el-Gebel is a famous place in Egypt. (.....)
- 2 Archaeologists found a mummy inside a burial chamber there. (.....)
- 3 The tomb has only modern drawings and objects. (.....)
- 4 Tuna el-Gebel shows Egypt's great heritage. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Tuna el-Gebel is a famous site.
a) camp b) burial c) hospital d) temple
- 2 discovered hundreds of preserved animals at the site.
a) Teachers b) Archaeologists c) Doctors d) Kings
- 3 The of Petosiris walls are covered with beautiful carvings.
a) temple b) school c) tomb d) pyramids
- 4 Every Egyptian feels proud of their country's rich
a) heritage b) desert c) building d) school
- 5 A/An is a special room inside a tomb.
a) chamber b) mummy c) animal d) statue
- 6 Tourists walking through Tuna el-Gebel usually feel
a) hungry b) bored c) amazed d) tired
- 7 A/An studies ancient places and old objects.
a) doctor b) archaeologist c) baker d) carpenter

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mummies – burial – priest – discoveries – carvings

Tuna el-Gebel is a mysterious burial site in the desert near Minya. Researchers made many exciting (1)....., including hundreds of animal (2)....., especially preserved birds. In the middle of the site stands the tomb of Petosiris, a high (3)..... who lived more than two thousand years ago. His tomb walls are covered with beautiful (4)..... and colorful scenes that show both Egyptian and Greek styles.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last week, I visited Tuna el-Gebel. It is a wonderful ancient place in Egypt. The area is famous for its underground chambers and long corridors filled with ancient art. In the middle of the site stands the tomb of Petosiris. His tomb walls are covered with beautiful carvings and colorful scenes that show both Egyptian and Greek styles. The mystery of how ancient Egyptians created such wonderful tombs and preserved animals continues to fascinate visitors. It was a great visit, and I learned a lot about Egypt's history and heritage.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 In the middle of the site stands the of Petosiris.
a) temple b) home c) castle d) tomb
- 2 Tuna el-Gebel is a wonderful place.
a) modern b) new c) ancient d) recent

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What is Tuna el-Gebel famous for?
- 4 What is covered with beautiful carvings and colorful scenes?
- 5 What is the mystery?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 made – exciting – Researchers – discoveries – many.
.....
- 2 The chambers – many – of animals – mummies – included.
.....
- 3 did – ancient – tombs – create – How – the – Egyptians?
.....
- 4 heritage – proud of – Egyptians – country's – their – feel – rich. Super Question ?
.....

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Your visit to Tuna el-Gebel"

chamber – mummy



.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 2

The Temple of Dakka



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



temple
معبد



ruler
حاكم



monument
أثر



border
حدود



restore
يرمم

Extra vocabulary

symbol	رمز	history	تاريخ	gods	آلهة
Thoth	الإله المصري القديم تحوت	Roman (adj)	روماني	emperors	أباطرة (جمع إمبراطور)
walls	جدران	different (adj)	مختلف	culture	ثقافة
traditions	تقاليد	water level	مستوى الماء	experts	خبراء
stone	حجر	gates	بوابات	treasures	كنوز

Expressions and Phrases

far from	بعيدًا عن	thousands of years	آلاف السنين	the god of wisdom	إله الحكمة
over time	مع مرور الوقت	close to	قريب من	tell stories	يُحكى قصصًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة					
Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
design يصمّم	designed	designed	add يضيف	added	added
respect يحترم	respected	respected	raise يرفع	raised	raised
restore يرمم / يستعيد	restored	restored	protect يحمي	protected	protected
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة					
Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
become يصبح	became	become	shine تشرق	shone	shone



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

What do you know about temples in Egypt?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Far from Egypt's busy cities, the **Temple of Dakka**⁽¹⁾ has stood quietly for thousands of years in **Nubia**⁽²⁾, near Egypt's **southern border**⁽³⁾. This ancient **monument**⁽⁴⁾ has become a symbol of Egypt's long and proud history. Many **rulers**⁽⁵⁾ have designed temples for ancient **gods**⁽⁶⁾ like Thoth, the god of **wisdom**⁽⁷⁾.

Over time, Greek and Roman **emperors**⁽⁸⁾ have added new walls and carvings, showing how different **cultures**⁽⁹⁾ have respected Egypt's traditions.

The temple once stood close to **the River Nile**⁽¹⁰⁾, but when **the High Dam**⁽¹¹⁾ raised the water level, Egyptian experts have worked carefully to restore it and move every stone to higher ground.

Today, visitors walk through its tall gates and watch the amazing carvings that tell stories of ancient gods and kings. The sunlight shines softly on its walls, and the quiet desert around the temple creates a peaceful, magical feeling. Everyone who has visited Dakka feels proud of how Egypt has protected its history and treasures.

(1)	معبد دكا
(2)	النوبة
(3)	الحدود الجنوبية
(4)	أثر
(5)	حكام
(6)	الالهة
(7)	حكمة
(8)	أباطرة
(9)	ثقافات
(10)	نهر النيل
(11)	السد العالي

بعيدًا عن المدن المزدحمة في مصر، يقف معبد دكا يهدوء منذ آلاف السنين في النوبة، بالقرب من الحدود الجنوبية لمصر. لقد أصبح هذا النصب القديم رمزًا لتاريخ مصر الطويل الباعث على الفخر. وقد قام العديد من الحكام بتصميم معابد للالهة القديمة مثل تحوت، إله الحكمة.

مع مرور الوقت، أضاف الأباطرة اليونانيون والرومانيون جدرانًا ونقوشًا جديدة، مما يظهر كيف احترمت الثقافات المختلفة تقاليد مصر.

كان المعبد في السابق قريبًا من نهر النيل، ولكن عندما رفع السد العالي مستوى المياه، عمل الخبراء المصريون بعناية لاستعادته ونقل كل حجر إلى أرض أعلى.

اليوم، يسير الزوار عبر بواباته العالية ويشاهدون النقوش المذهلة التي تحكي قصص الآلهة والملوك القدماء. يسطع ضوء الشمس برفق على جدرانه، وتخلق الصحراء الهادئة المحيطة بالمعبد شعورًا هادئًا وساحرًا. كل من زار دكا يشعر بالفخر بكيفية حماية مصر لتاريخها وكنوزها.

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The Temple of Dakka has stood quietly for thousands of years in Nubia.
يقف معبد دكا بهدوء منذ آلاف السنين في نوبيا.
- ✓ The temple is a symbol of Egypt's long and proud history.
المعبد هو رمز لتاريخ مصر الطويل والمجيد.
- ✓ Many rulers designed temples for ancient gods like Thoth, the god of wisdom.
صمّم العديد من الحكام معابد للآلهة القديمة مثل تحوت، إله الحكمة.
- ✓ Greek and Roman emperors have added new walls and carvings, showing respect for Egypt's traditions.
أضاف الأباطرة اليونانيون والرومانيون جدرانًا ونقوشًا جديدة، مما يظهر احترامهم لتقاليد مصر.
- ✓ The temple was moved carefully to higher ground when the High Dam raised the water level.
تم نقل المعبد بعناية إلى أرض أعلى عندما رفع السد العالي مستوى المياه.
- ✓ Visitors walk through its tall gates and watch the amazing carvings.
يمشي الزوار عبر بواباته العالية ويشاهدون النقوش المذهلة.
- ✓ The quiet desert around the temple creates a peaceful, magical feeling.
تخلق الصحراء الهادئة المحيطة بالمعبد شعورًا هادئًا وساحرًا.
- ✓ Visiting the Temple of Dakka makes people feel proud of how Egypt has protected its history and treasures.
زيارة معبد دكا تجعل الناس فخورين بكيفية حماية مصر لتاريخها وكنوزها.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Fill in the blanks using the words from the box:

SB

border – monument – restore – rulers – temple

- ① The Temple of Dakka is an ancient that has stood for thousands of years.
- ② Many have built it for the god Thoth.
- ③ Experts have worked hard to the temple after the High Dam was built.
- ④ It lies near Egypt's southern with Sudan.
- ⑤ Egyptian experts have moved the of Dakka to a higher place.

2. Read again and answer:

SB

- ① What have visitors said about their experience at Dakka?

- ② How long has the Temple of Dakka stood?

Language in Use

The Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Usage:

الاستخدام:

We use the Present Perfect to talk about:

نستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتحدث عن:

- Actions that started in the past and continue now.

أفعال بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن.

- Things that happened recently with results we can see today.

أشياء حدثت مؤخرًا ولها نتائج نراها اليوم.

- Actions that happened in the past without specifying the time.

الأفعال التي حدثت في الماضي دون تحديد وقت حدوثها.

e.g. I **have lived** here for five years.

لقد عشتُ هنا لمدة خمس سنوات.

e.g. They **have** already **finished** their homework.

لقد أنهوا واجبهم بالفعل.

e.g. She **has cleaned** her room.

لقد قامت بتنظيف غرفتها.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + **has/have** + **past participle** (التصريف الثالث) ...

I / We / You / They	have	past participle ... (التصريف الثالث)
He / She / It	has	

e.g. Experts **have restored** the temple.

قد قام الخبراء بترميم المعبد.

e.g. Eslam **has** already **eaten** his lunch.

قد تناول إسلام غداءه بالفعل.

e.g. They **have visited** Aswan.

لقد زاروا أسوان.

e.g. She **has** just **arrived**.

لقد وصلت حاليًا.

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			
Present	Past	Past participle	
work يعمل	worked	worked	
move ينقل	moved	moved	
visit يزور	visited	visited	
like يحب	liked	liked	
restore يستعيد	restored	restored	
finish ينهى	finished	finished	
develop يطوّر	developed	developed	
discover يكتشف	discovered	discovered	
learn يتعلم	learned	learned	

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	Past	Past participle	
build يبني	built	built	
go يذهب	went	gone	
write يكتب	wrote	written	
see يرى	saw	seen	
eat يأكل	ate	eaten	
stand يقف	stood	stood	
become يصبح	became	become	
take يأخذ	took	taken	
read يقرأ	read	read	

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (الفاعل) **have / has (not) + past participle** (التصريف الثالث) ...

I / We / You / They	have not = haven't	past participle (التصريف الثالث)
He / She / It	has not = hasn't	

e.g. Many tourists **have not visited** Dakka.
العديد من السياح لم يزوروا دكا.

e.g. She **has not cleaned** her room.
هي لم تنظف غرفتها.

e.g. We **haven't seen** this movie.
لم نر هذا الفيلم.

e.g. Amr **hasn't finished** his homework.
عمرو لم يُنه واجبه المنزلي.



Got it:

He hasn't (**saw**) that movie.

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**seen**) لأن بعد الفعل (**has**) في زمن المضارع التام يأتي الفعل في التصريف الثالث.

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بهل:

Question

السؤال

Have	I / we / you / they
Has	he / she / it

past participle (p.p.)?

Answer

الاجابة

Yes,

subject (الفاعل)

have / has.

No,

haven't / hasn't.

e.g. A: Have you traveled to Aswan?

B: Yes, I have.

Or

B: No, I haven't.

e.g. A: Has she seen the carvings?

B: Yes, she has.

Or

B: No, she hasn't.

Wh- question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word

have

I / we / you / they

كلمة الاستفهام

has

he / she / it

past participle (p.p.)?

e.g. A: What have you bought?

B: I have bought a new shirt.

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

- يأتي المضارع التام غالبًا مع بعض الكلمات مثل:

recently حديثًا / مؤخرًا — just حاليًا — already بالفعل — ever من قبل — never أبدًا — since منذ — for لمدة

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- 1 Mona has (eat – ate – eaten – eating) her lunch.
- 2 They have (finish – finished – finishing – finishes) the project.
- 3 Has Omar (clean – cleaned – cleaning – cleans) his room?
- 4 We haven't (see – saw – seen – seeing) this movie before.
- 5 Ali has (go – went – gone – going) to the library.
- 6 We have (read – reads – reading – is reading) this book many times.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The temple (have) stood in Nubia for hundreds of years.
- 2 (Did) your sister finished her work successfully?
- 3 They haven't (visiting) the temple.
- 4 The experts (has) moved the temple to higher ground.
- 5 Have the students (complete) their project?
- 6 The archaeologists (discover) an ancient tomb recently.

Quick Practice On The Present Perfect Tense

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① We have already (eat) our lunch.
- ② I have (watch) the match.
- ③ Scientists (work) so hard to protect our history.
- ④ We have (pick up) our bags from the airport.
- ⑤ People who have (visiting) Egypt feel proud and excited.
- ⑥ Has it (rain) today?
- ⑦ Engineers (has) designed new bridges.
- ⑧ Have visitors (like) the carvings?
- ⑨ I have (not clean) my room.
- ⑩ Greek and Roman emperors (has add) new walls.
- ⑪ The girls (cycle) in the park for two hours.
- ⑫ The students have (took) many photos during the trip.
- ⑬ The scientists have (discover) a new species of fish.
- ⑭ Has she (clean) her desk?
- ⑮ Egypt (protect) its history.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- ① visited – have – We – Egypt.
.....
- ② The – restored – experts – the temple – have.
.....
- ③ hasn't – finished – She – her – work.
.....
- ④ Have – seen – the carvings – they?
.....
- ⑤ added – Emperors – new – have – walls.
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Egypt has its history and treasure.
a) wasted b) protected c) forgotten d) visited
- 2 Many rulers have designed temples for the ancient like Thoth.
a) kings b) queens c) gods d) animals
- 3 Egyptian experts have the Temple of Dakka.
a) wasted b) restored c) cried d) played
- 4 All carvings tell of ancient gods.
a) stories b) walls c) reasons d) lies
- 5 Greek and Roman have added new walls and carvings.
a) pilots b) sailors c) nurses d) emperors
- 6 People respect Egypt's ancient and traditions.
a) culture b) walls c) gates d) ground
- 7 I my homework already.
a) does b) are c) have done d) done
- 8 We have many photos of the Pyramids.
a) taken b) took c) taking d) take
- 9 your friends heard the news about Tuna el-Gebel?
a) Is b) Does c) Has d) Have
- 10 I lunch, so I am not hungry.
a) has b) eaten c) have eaten d) has eaten

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

traditions – monument – wisdom – experts – rulers

The Temple of Dakka is an ancient (1)..... in Nubia, near Egypt's southern border. Many (2)..... built temples for gods like Thoth, the god of (3)..... . Later, Greek and Roman emperors added new walls and carvings, showing how different cultures have respected Egypt's (4)..... . Everyone who has visited Dakka feels proud of how Egypt has protected its history and treasures.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The experts have (move) the temple to higher ground.
- 2 Tourists (has) visited the Temple of Dakka.
- 3 The temple (stand) in Nubia for hundreds of years.
- 4 (Has) the experts restored the temple carefully?
- 5 (Have) you written the email?
- 6 Egypt has (build) new cities.
- 7 My father (haven't) forgotten my birthday.
- 8 Many companies have (opening) their new factories in the new capital.
- 9 The ancient monument (become) a symbol of Egypt's history.
- 10 Visitors have (take) many photos of the temple.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 has – cooked – lunch – mother – My.
.....
- 2 you – watched – movie – this – Have – funny?
.....
- 3 taken – Hana – has – photos – camera – with her.
.....
- 4 built – Workers – have – buildings – new. 
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 What do you know about temples in Egypt
.....
- 2 the Temple of Dakka has stood in Nubia for thousands of years.
.....

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“The Temple of Dakka”
monument – carvings



.....

.....

.....

.....



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



tour guide
مرشد سياحي



craftsman
حرفي



design
يصمّم



discover
يكشف



pattern
نقش / نمط

Extra vocabulary

royal (adj)	ملكي	skilled (adj)	ماهر	workers	عمّال
the Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك	interesting (adj)	مثير للاهتمام	notebook	دفتر ملاحظات
kind	نوع	wonderful (adj)	رائع	daily life	الحياة اليومية

Expressions and Phrases

pieces of	قطع من	That sounds like ...	هذا يبدو مثل ...	Exactly!	بالضبط!
-----------	--------	----------------------	------------------	----------	---------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
discover يكتشف	discover ^{ed}	discover ^{ed}	notice يلاحظ	notice ^d	notice ^d
decorate يزيّن	decorate ^d	decorate ^d	help يساعد	help ^{ed}	help ^{ed}

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
hear يسمع	heard	heard	show يُظهر	showed	shown
say يقول	said	said	understand يفهم	understood	understood



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Tour Guide

Welcome to Deir el-Medina, the ancient village where the craftsmen who built the royal tombs once lived. Have you ever heard about this place before?

مرحبًا بكم في دير المدينة، القرية القديمة التي عاش فيها الحرفيون الذين بنوا المقابر الملكية. هل سمعت عن هذا المكان من قبل؟

No, I haven't. Who lived here?

لا، لم أسمع. من الذي عاش هنا؟



Tourist



Tour Guide

Skilled workers and artists have lived here with their families. They have painted and carved the tombs of the kings in the Valley of the Kings.

عمال مهرة وفنانون عاشوا هنا مع عائلاتهم. لقد رسموا ونقشوا مقابر الملوك في وادي الملوك.

Have archaeologists discovered anything interesting in their houses?

هل اكتشف علماء الآثار أي شيء مثير في بيوتهم؟



Tourist



Tour Guide

Yes, they have. They've discovered drawings and notes on pieces of pottery.

نعم، لقد اكتشفوا رسومات وملاحظات على قطع من الفخار.

That sounds like the first kind of notebook!

هذا يشبه أول نوع من الدفاتر!



Tourist



Tour Guide

Exactly! Have you noticed the patterns on the walls? They show how the workers decorated their homes.

بالضبط! هل لاحظت النقوش على الجدران؟ إنها تُظهر كيف كان العمال يزيّنون منازلهم.

It's wonderful to see how artists lived thousands of years ago.

من الرائع رؤية كيفية عيش الفنانين منذ آلاف السنين.



Tourist



Tour Guide

Many visitors have said the same. Deir el-Medina helps us understand daily life in ancient Egypt.

كثير من الزوار قالوا الشيء نفسه. دير المدينة يساعدنا على فهم الحياة اليومية في مصر القديمة.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Deir el-Medina was an ancient village for craftsmen and artists.
كان دير المدينة قرية قديمة عاش فيها الحرفيون والفنانون.
- ✓ They have painted and carved the royal tombs in the Valley of the Kings.
لقد رسموا ونقشوا المقابر الملكية في وادي الملوك.
- ✓ Archaeologists have discovered drawings and notes on pieces of pottery.
لقد اكتشف علماء الآثار رسومات وملاحظات على قطع من الفخار.
- ✓ The walls show patterns that the workers used to decorate their homes.
تظهر الجدران نقوشاً كان العمال يستخدمونها لتزيين منازلهم.
- ✓ The discoveries help us learn about daily life in ancient Egypt.
تساعدنا الاكتشافات على معرفة الحياة اليومية في مصر القديمة.
- ✓ Many visitors have said it's wonderful to see how artists lived thousands of years ago.
قال العديد من الزوار إنه من الرائع رؤية كيف عاش الفنانون منذ آلاف السنين.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Write (T) true or (F) false:

- ① Deir el-Medina was a village for the craftsmen who built tombs. (.....)
- ② The workers lived far from their families. (.....)
- ③ Archaeologists have found drawings on pieces of pottery. (.....)
- ④ The workers decorated their homes with wall patterns. (.....)
- ⑤ Many visitors have said that Deir el-Medina shows daily life in ancient Egypt. (.....)

2. Fill in the blanks using the words from the box:

SB

craftsman – design – discover – restore – pattern

- ① A person who builds or makes things skillfully is a
- ② To find something that was lost or unknown is to it.
- ③ The beautiful shapes on the walls show a wonderful
- ④ The team will the old tombs to keep them safe.
- ⑤ The artist made a new for the temple doors.

Pronunciation

Word Building: -ify/-er



Read and notice:

أقرأ ولاحظ:

A **suffix** is a small part we add at the end of a word to make a new word.

اللاحقة (Suffix) هي جزء صغير نضيفه في نهاية الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

The suffix “-ify”

The suffix “-er”

The suffix “-ify” means “to make” or “to cause to become.”

اللاحقة “-ify” تعني “يجعل” أو “التسبب في أن يصبح”.

We add “-ify” to nouns or adjectives to form verbs.

نضيف “-ify” إلى الأسماء أو الصفات لتكوين أفعال.

The suffix “-er” means someone who performs an action.”

اللاحقة “-er” تعني أن شخصًا يقوم بفعل معين.

Base Word		+ -ify / -er	Meaning	
simple	بسيط	simplify	to make something simple	لجعل شيء بسيط
pure	نقى	purify	to make something clean or pure	لجعل شيء نظيفًا أو نقيًا
clear	واضح	clarify	to make something clear	لجعل شيء واضح
drive	يقود	driver	someone who drives	شخص يقود
bake	يخبز	baker	someone who bakes	شخص يخبز
teach	يعلم	teacher	someone who teaches	شخص يعلم

✓ Checkpoint Use the correct form of the word in brackets:

SB

- Engineers work to the water before it reaches our homes. (pure)
- The teacher helped the new rule for the students. (clear)
- A helps students learn. (teach)
- Modern machines work and save time. (simple)
- A makes fresh bread and cakes. (bake)



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Deir el-Medina was a village for the who built the royal tombs.
a) kings b) craftsmen c) visitors d) engineers
- 2 Skilled workers and artists have the tombs.
a) carved b) played c) buried d) destroyed
- 3 The discovered drawings and notes on pieces of pottery.
a) friends b) archaeologists c) visitors d) tourists
- 4 The beautiful shapes on the walls show a wonderful
a) match b) pattern c) meal d) toy
- 5 The workers in Deir el-Medina built
a) games b) Pyramids c) tombs d) foods
- 6 Modern machines work and save time.
a) simple b) teach c) clear d) simplify
- 7 To find something that was lost or unknown is to it.
a) discover b) recycle c) design d) say
- 8 Artists can walls with beautiful colors. **SB**
a) paint b) hide c) throw d) break
- 9 A makes fresh bread and cakes.
a) king b) baker c) doctor d) cook
- 10 A person who builds or makes things skillfully is a **SB**
a) craftsman b) baker c) king d) scientist

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

treasure – tour guide – archaeologists – Egyptians – craftsman

When I visited an ancient temple in Egypt, the (1)..... told us many amazing facts about the place. He said that every (2)..... worked carefully to design the walls with beautiful patterns and colors. Inside the tombs, (3)..... still discover new drawings. These temples and tombs show the great skill and art of the ancient (4).....

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt where skilled craftsmen and artists lived with their families. They built and decorated the royal tombs in the Valley of the Kings. Archaeologists have discovered drawings and notes on pottery, showing how the workers recorded their work. The walls of their houses had beautiful patterns. Deir el-Medina helps us understand the daily life of the people in ancient Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Deir el-Medina was a
 a) city b) country c) village d) bridge
- 2 Craftsmen built and decorated the royal
 a) temples b) tombs c) Pyramids d) homes

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who did the craftsmen live with?

.....

- 4 What did the archaeologists discover?

.....

- 5 How does Deir el-Medina help us?

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 helps – students – learn – A teacher.

.....

- 2 you – heard – Have – about – Deir el-Medina?

.....

- 3 have – noticed – on – the – I – the patterns – walls.

.....

- 4 have – Archaeologists – discovered – and – notes – drawings.

Super Question ?

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 deir el-medina helps us understand daily life in ancient Egypt.

.....

- 2 who do you think built the tombs

.....



The Valley of the Whales (Wadi El-Hitan)



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية	valley	وادي	fossils	حفريات
whales	حيتان	skeletons	هياكل عظمية	trails	مسارات

Extra vocabulary

deep (adj)	عميق	magical (adj)	سحري	personalized itineraries	برامج رحلات مخصصة
ocean	محيط	incredible (adj)	لا يصدق / رائع	details	تفاصيل
remarkable (adj)	مميز	magnificent (adj)	مذهل	creatures	مخلوقات
scientific (adj)	علمي	historical (adj)	تاريخي	bones	عظام
resort	منتجع	cruise	جولة بحرية	generations	أجيال

Expressions and Phrases

millions of years ago	منذ ملايين السنين	longer than	أطول من	because of	بسبب
walk along	تمشي على طول	see the fossils lying	رؤية الحفريات مستلقية	remain safe	يبقى آمناً

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
cover يغطي	cover ed	cover ed	change يغيّر	change d	change d
protect يحمي	protect ed	protect ed	ensure يتأكد/ يضمن	ensure d	ensure d
remind يذكر	remind ed	remind ed	appreciate يقدر/ يثمن	appreciate d	appreciate d

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
become يصبح	became	become	find يجد	found	found
swim يسبح	swam	swum	tell يخبر	told	told

Wadi El-Hitan: Egypt's Valley of the Whales

وادي الحيتان في مصر



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

Have you ever seen a fossil? Where do you think scientists find them?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Posted on March 15, 2025

By Salma, Student Explorer

Deep in the **Western Desert**⁽¹⁾, there is a magical place called Wadi El-Hitan, or the Valley of the Whales. Millions of years ago, this area was covered by a very big **ocean**⁽²⁾. Archaeologists have discovered hundreds of **fossils**⁽³⁾ of ancient whales that once swam here.

Some of these **skeletons**⁽⁴⁾ are longer than 15 meters, showing incredible details of their **bones**⁽⁵⁾. These fossils tell a remarkable story about how whales changed from land animals into the magnificent ocean **creatures**⁽⁶⁾ we know today.

Because of its **scientific**⁽⁷⁾ and historical importance, Wadi El-Hitan has become a world heritage site. Visitors can walk along the desert **trails**⁽⁸⁾ and see the fossils lying exactly where they were found. It feels like visiting a **natural**⁽⁹⁾ museum, where every fossil tells a story. Egypt has protected this area carefully to ensure the fossils remain safe for **future generations**⁽¹⁰⁾.

Wadi El-Hitan is not just a place of science, it is a symbol of Egypt's rich natural history, reminding young people to appreciate and feel proud of their country's treasures.

(1) الصحراء الغربية

(2) محيط

(3) حفريات

(4) هياكل عظمية

(5) عظام

(6) مخلوقات

(7) علمي

(8) مسارات

(9) طبيعي

(10) الأجيال القادمة

تم النشر في ١٥ مارس ٢٠٢٥

بقلم: سلمي، طالبة مستكشفة

في أعماق الصحراء الغربية، يوجد مكان سحري يُسمى وادي الحيتان. قبل ملايين السنين، كان هذا المكان مغطى بمحيط ضخم جدًا. وقد اكتشف علماء الكبار مئات من حفريات الحيتان القديمة التي كانت تسبح هنا.

بعض هذه الهياكل العظمية أطول من ١٥ مترًا، وتظهر تفاصيل مذهلة لعظامها. تحكي هذه الحفريات قصة مميزة عن كيف تحولت الحيتان من حيوانات برية إلى المخلوقات البحرية المذهلة التي نعرفها اليوم.

نظرًا لأهميته العلمية والتاريخية، أصبح وادي الحيتان موقعًا للتراث العالمي. يمكن للزوار المشي على مسارات الصحراء ومشاهدة الحفريات كما وُجدت تمامًا في مكانها الأصلي. يشعر الزائر وكأنه في متحف طبيعي، حيث تحكي كل أحفورة قصة. لقد حرصت مصر على حماية هذا المكان بعناية لضمان بقاء الحفريات آمنة للأجيال القادمة.

وادي الحيتان ليس مجرد مكان للعلم، بل هو رمز لتاريخ مصر الطبيعي الغني، ويذكر الشباب بتقدير كنوز بلادهم والشعور بالفخر بها.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Wadi El-Hitan, or the Valley of the Whales, is a magical place in the Western Desert.

وادي الحيتان، هو مكان سحري في الصحراء الغربية.

- ✓ Millions of years ago, the area was covered by a big ocean.

منذ ملايين السنين، كانت هذه المنطقة مغطاة بمحيط كبير.

- ✓ Archaeologists have discovered hundreds of whale fossils and skeletons, some longer than 15 meters.

اكتشف علماء الآثار مئات الحفريات والهياكل العظمية للحيتان، وبعضها أطول من 15 مترًا.

- ✓ The fossils show how whales changed from land animals into ocean creatures.

تُظهر الحفريات كيف تحولت الحيتان من حيوانات أرضية إلى مخلوقات بحرية.

- ✓ Wadi El-Hitan is a world heritage site because of its scientific and historical importance.

يُعد وادي الحيتان موقعًا تراثيًا عالميًا بسبب أهميته العلمية والتاريخية.

- ✓ Visitors can walk along the desert trails and see the fossils lying where they were found.

يمكن للزوار السير على طول مسارات الصحراء ورؤية الحفريات مستلقية في المكان الذي وُجدت فيه.

- ✓ Egypt has protected the area to ensure the fossils remain safe for future generations.

حمت مصر المنطقة لضمان بقاء الحفريات آمنة للأجيال القادمة.

- ✓ The site reminds young people to appreciate and feel proud of Egypt's natural treasures.

يذكّر هذا الموقع الشباب بتقدير كنوز مصر الطبيعية والشعور بالفخر بها.



Writing Tip

To write a short blog you should:

- 1 Start with a title that catches attention.

ابدأ بعنوان يجذب الانتباه.

- 2 Write the date and your name.

اكتب التاريخ واسمك.

- 3 Use paragraphs to organize your ideas.

استخدم فقرات لتنظيم أفكارك.

- 4 Describe the place or event clearly.

صِف المكان أو الحدث بوضوح.

- 5 Share your feelings or opinion.

شارك مشاعرك أو رأيك.

- 6 End with a take home message.

اختم برسالة يمكن أن يستفيد منها القارئ.

Think and create

Project: Egypt's Hidden Wonders Tour



About Our Company

Discover the world with ease.

We offer personalized itineraries, guided tours, cruise bookings, and exclusive resort packages tailored to your dream vacation.

حول شركتنا:

اكتشف العالم بسهولة. نحن نقدم برامج رحلات مخصصة، جولات سياحية مرشدة، حجوزات رحلات بحرية، وباقات منتجعات حصرية مُصممة خصيصًا لتناسب عطلتك المثالية.



Get in Touch

Mobile:

Email:

Website:

Social:

Welcome to
Stars Travel & Tours

مرحبًا بكم في
شركة ستارز للسفر والسياحة

Plan your unforgettable journey
with us.

خطط رحلتك التي لا تُنسى معنا.

Create your own travel brochure أنشئ كتيب السفر الخاص بك

Title: العنوان:

Slogan: الشعار:

1. About the place

1. عن المكان

Write 3–4 sentences about where it is and why it's special

ما يمكنك رؤيته أو فعله

2. What you can see or do

2. ما يمكنك رؤيته أو فعله

Use bullet points or short sentences

استخدم نقاطًا أو جمل قصيرة

3. Visitor comment

3. تعليق الزائر

Write what a visitor might say about their experience

اكتب ما قد يقوله زائر عن تجربته

4. Travel information

4. معلومات السفر

Location: الموقع:

How to get there: كيفية الوصول إليه:

Best time to visit: أفضل وقت للزيارة:

What to bring: ما يجب إحضاره:

5. Add a picture or drawing

5. أضف صورة أو رسم

Practice



Lessons 4 and 5

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 To keep something safe from harm or damage means to it.
a) forget b) protect c) break d) cave
- 2 The bones of a human or animal body form the
a) statue b) skeleton c) tomb d) map
- 3 Egypt has protected the fossils to keep them
a) safe b) lost c) broken d) hidden
- 4 of ancient whales were discovered by archaeologists.
a) Beaches b) Fossils c) Sand d) Rocks
- 5 Visitors can walk along desert to see fossils.
a) trails b) rivers c) lakes d) valleys
- 6 The fossils show details of whale bones.
a) incredible b) hot c) few d) bad
- 7 Fossils remind young people to and feel proud of Egypt's treasures.
a) forget b) appreciate c) ignore d) hide

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

heritage – fossils – trails – safe – museum

Deep in the Western Desert, there is a magical place called Wadi El-Hitan, or the Valley of the Whales. Visitors can walk along the desert (1)..... . Archaeologists have discovered many (2)..... of ancient whales. It feels like visiting a natural (3)..... . Egypt has protected the area to keep the fossils (4)..... for future generations.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Omar. Last week, I visited Wadi El-Hitan, the Valley of the Whales, in the Western Desert of Egypt. It was amazing to see the fossils and skeletons of ancient whales that lived here millions of years ago. The archaeologists have discovered many of these fossils, showing how whales changed from land animals

to ocean creatures. Walking along the desert trails, it felt like I was visiting a natural museum. Egypt has done a great job to protect this important heritage site, and I felt proud to learn about the country's natural treasures!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 There are fossils and skeletons of ancient in Wadi El-Hitan.
a) sites b) whales c) trees d) kings
- 2 Wadi El-Hitan is a
a) galaxy b) valley c) home d) temple

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What have the archaeologists discovered about ancient whales?
.....
- 4 How did Omar feel while walking along the desert trails?
.....
- 5 What was Omar proud to learn about?
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 a – is – place – Wadi El-Hitan – magical.
.....
- 2 protected – has – carefully – Wadi El-Hitan – Egypt.
.....
- 3 whale – are – skeletons – than – Some – longer – 15 meters. Super Question ?
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 wadi El-hitan has become a heritage site.
.....
- 2 have you ever seen fossils
.....

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“Wadi El-Hitan”

magical – fossils



Unit 3

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

burial	الدفن	archaeologist	عالم آثار
mummy	مومياء	discovery	اكتشاف
chamber	غرفة / حجرة	mystery	لغز / شيء غامض
mysterious	غامض	site	موقع
underground	تحت الأرض	priest	كاهن / راهب
heritage	تراث	Greek	يوناني

Lesson (2)

temple	معبد	ruler	حاكم
monument	أثر	border	حدود
restore	يرمم / يستعيد	gods	آلهة
history	تاريخ	traditions	تقاليد
culture	ثقافة	treasures	كنوز
stone	حجر	emperors	أباطرة
gates	بوابات	symbol	رمز

Lesson (3)

tour guide	مرشد سياحي	craftsman	حرفي
design	يصمم	discover	يكشف
pattern	نقش / نمط	artists	فنانون
skilled	ماهر	the Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك
pottery	فخار	royal	ملكي
simplify	يبسط	purify	ينقى
clarify	يوضح	baker	خباز

Lessons (4 and 5)

the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية	valley	وادي
fossils	حفريات	whales	حيتان
skeletons	شياكل عظمية	trails	مسارات
creatures	مخلوقات	ocean	محيط
scientific	علمي	bones	عظام

Language in Use

The present perfect Tense

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I / We / You / They + **have** + **past participle**
e.g. Experts **have restored** the temple.

He / She / It + **has** + **past participle**
e.g. She **has cleaned** her room.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

I / We / You / They + **have not** + **past participle**
e.g. Many tourists **haven't visited** Dakka.

He / She / It + **has not** + **past participle**
e.g. Amr **hasn't finished** his homework.

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـهل:

Have/ Has + subject + **past participle**?

e.g. **Have** the visitors seen the carvings? e.g. B: **Yes**, they **have**. OR B: **No**, they **haven't**.

Unit 3

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالإنجليزية	الكلمة بالعربية
الدفن	discovery
عالم آثار	chamber
مومياء	mystery
منقوشات	heritage
باحثون	ancient

Lesson 2

معبد	history
حاكم	Roman
أثر	experts
حدود	treasures
تقاليد	emperors

Lesson 3

مرشد سياحي	interesting
حرفي	royal
نقش / نمط	pottery
قرية	skilled
فنانون	daily life
دفتر ملاحظات	workers

Lessons 4 and 5

وادي	the Western Desert
حفريات	creatures
مسارات	ocean
هياكل عظمية	bones
حيتان	generations

Conjugation of verbs

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Present	Past	Present	Past
.....	made	carve	.....
fascinate	.....	.....	said
.....	felt	.....	appreciated
shine	.....	find	.....
.....	restored	.....	covered



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about "Tuna el-Gebel"

- o Tuna el-Gebel is + صف موقعها
- o It has + صف ما يحتوي عليه هذا المكان
- o The tomb of Petosiris is in the middle of the site.
- o Its walls + صف حيطان هذه المقبرة
- o I feel + صف شعورك عند زيارة هذا الموقع

"Tuna el-Gebel"

Tuna el-Gebel is an ancient archaeological site in Egypt. It has underground chambers and long corridors filled with amazing art. The tomb of Petosiris is in the middle of the site. Its walls are covered with beautiful carvings and colorful scenes in both Egyptian and Greek styles. I saw how ancient Egyptians preserved animals in the tombs. I feel amazed and proud to visit Tuna el-Gebel and learn about Egypt's history and heritage.

How to write about "Wadi El-Hitan"

- o Wadi El- Hitan is + اذكر ما هو ومكانه
- o Archaeologist have discovered + اذكر ما اكتشفه علماء الآثار في هذه المنطقة
- o Some skeletons are + اذكر كيف كانت الهياكل العظمية
- o Wadi El-Hitan has become a world heritage site.

"Wadi El-Hitan"

Wadi El-Hitan is a magical place deep in the western Desert. Archaeologists have discovered hundreds of fossils of ancient whales that once swam here. Some skeletons are showing incredible details of their bones. Wadi El-Hitan has become a world heritage site because of its scientific and historical importance.

1 Choose the correct form:

- 1 The experts (**have moved** / **moved**) the temple to higher ground.
- 2 Tourists (**haven't visited** / **don't visit**) the Temple of Dakka often.
- 3 (**Have** / **Did**) the experts restored the temple carefully?
- 4 The temple (**has stood** / **stood**) in Nubia for hundreds of years.
- 5 (**Has** / **Did**) the team finished their work successfully?

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets:

- 1 Experts the Temple of Dakka carefully. (**restore**)
- 2 Many tourists the tomb of Petosiris. (**not visit**)
- 3 Archaeologists hundreds of mummies. (**discover**)
- 4 Egypt the Temple of Dakka to higher ground. (**move**)
- 5 Students more about ancient Egypt. (**learn**)

3 Circle the odd one out:

- 1 purify – clarify – simplify – teach
- 2 simplify – clarify – run – purify
- 3 teacher – purify – baker – driver
- 4 clarify – purify – simplify – play
- 5 simplify – walk – purify – clarify

4 Complete the sentences using the words from the box:

clarify – purify – teacher – trainer – simplify

- 1 Scientists use special filters to the water before people drink it.
- 2 The shows how to exercise safely.
- 3 The reads a story to the class.
- 4 The manager called a meeting to the new company rules.
- 5 Modern technology helps daily tasks in schools and offices.



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Deir el-Medina was a village for craftsmen and artists. (.....)
- 2 They built Pyramids in the Valley of the Kings. (.....)
- 3 Archaeologists found drawings and notes on pottery. (.....)
- 4 The walls of their houses had ugly patterns. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 She finished her trip in Wadi El-Hitan.
a) have b) has c) having d) is
- 2 He studies ancient places and things to learn about the past. He is a/an
a) doctor b) archaeologist c) teacher d) engineer
- 3 The ancient kings were buried in beautiful
a) tombs b) homes c) temples d) schools
- 4 They have the temple with their family.
a) visits b) visiting c) visited d) visit

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

archaeologist – baker – chamber – heritage – mystery

Tuna el-Gebel is a famous place in Egypt. An (1)..... made an amazing discovery there, a mummy inside a burial (2)..... . The tomb is full of beautiful drawings and old objects. It is a (3)..... how people built it so long ago. Tuna el-Gebel shows Egypt's great (4)..... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

The Temple of Dakka in Nubia is an ancient monument that shows Egypt's long history. Many rulers have designed temples for old gods, such as Thoth, the god of wisdom. The walls have beautiful carvings that tell stories of kings and gods. The temple was near the River Nile, but Egyptian experts have carefully moved it to higher ground to protect it from the rising water. Visitors feel proud when they see the temple because Egypt has preserved this great monument for future generations.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Temple of Dakka is in
 a) Luxor b) Nubia c) Cairo d) Alexandria
- 2 The underlined word "preserved" means
 a) bury b) design c) protect d) study

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why have the rulers designed temples?
- 4 What do the walls tell stories about?
- 5 Why have experts moved the temple?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 We have (eat). We aren't hungry.
- 2 He (study) the history of Egypt for 5 years.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 workers – have lived – Skilled – and – here – artists.

- 2 discovered – fossils – Archaeologists – hundreds – of.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 she is egyptian, but has moved abroad.
- 2 how do you feel about heritage of your country

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

"A place you want to visit in Egypt"

monument – heritage





Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The Temple of Dakka is in Nubia near Egypt's southern border. (.....)
- 2 Rulers have designed temples for kings. (.....)
- 3 Greek and Roman emperors added walls and carvings. (.....)
- 4 Egyptian experts haven't moved the temple. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 The of the dinosaur was huge in the museum.
a) picture b) bone c) tomb d) skeleton
- 2 The castle looked under the bright sun.
a) bored b) ugly c) messy d) magnificent
- 3 I looked for more information to do this research.
a) has b) have c) had d) am
- 4 Has your friend sushi before?
a) eaten b) eat c) ate d) eating

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

proud – River Nile – Thoth – rulers – expert

The Temple of Dakka in Nubia is an ancient monument that shows Egypt's long history. Many (1)..... have designed temples for old gods like (2)..... . There are beautiful carvings on the walls that tell stories of kings. It was near the (3)....., but experts moved it to higher ground to save it. Visitors feel (4)..... because Egypt has protected this great temple.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Egypt has played an important role in preserving its ancient heritage, and this role continues even today. It has protected Wadi Al-Hitan, keeping it as a natural museum where visitors can see fossils and skeletons of ancient creatures. The country has also saved the Temple of Dakka, restoring its walls and maintaining its structure for future generations. In addition, Egypt takes care of Deir El-Medina, which helps us understand the daily life of ancient Egyptians. Through these efforts, Egypt shows how much it values its history and culture and works to protect it for the future.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Egypt played an important role in persevering its ancient
a) language b) land c) heritage d) dream
- 2 The underlined word "restoring" means
a) taking b) going to the store c) bringing back d) showing

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What has Egypt done for the Temple of Dakka?
- 4 Why does Egypt make these efforts?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 My father has already (buy) tickets for the school trip.
- 2 (Have) the carpenter finished his work?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 you – helped – Have – country – your?
.....
- 2 heritage – Wadi – is – a world – site – El-Hitan.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 i haven t seen you for a long time.
- 2 how much do you love egypt?

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

"How Egypt restored the Temple of Dakka"

border – High Dam



.....

.....

.....

.....



A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

(الرجاء راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

traditions – protect – treasures – ancient – modern – western

Ali : Are you reading about Egyptian history, Sara?

Sara : Yes! I'm learning about the (1) temples in Aswan.

Ali : What makes them special?

Sara : They hold many important (2) from the past.

Ali : How do experts keep them safe?

Sara : They work hard to (3) every statue and wall.

Ali : Do people still visit them today?

Sara : Of course! They are famous in both (4) and ancient Egypt.

Ali : Egyptian (5) are really amazing!

B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 He has (visit) the Egyptian Museum many times.

2 We (not finished) our project about ancient temples.

3 My friend has (see) the fossils in Wadi El-Hitan.

4 They (build) many modern houses recently.

5 She (read) a book about Nubian culture.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1 We should be (shy – sad – proud) of our history.

2 We walked in the desert (circles – tables – trails) to see birds.

3 Every Egyptian feels proud of the country's rich (desert – heritage – building).

4 A (chamber – animal – desert) is a special room inside a tomb.

5 Egypt has (wasted – protected – visited) its history and treasures.

6 Students (have – has – were) studied their lessons.

7 They have (watch – watched – watching) this funny movie.

8 The sun has (shine – shinning – shone) on the carvings all morning.

9 Experts have (restore – restored – restores) the ancient temple.

10 We (sees – has seen – have seen) beautiful art in the temple.

C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

1 added	worked	restored	walk
2 play	purify	simplify	clarify
3 southern	eastern	cap	western
4 teacher	purify	baker	driver
5 temple	tomb	whale	pyramid

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Wadi El-Hitan, the Valley of the Whales, is a magical place in the Western Desert. Millions of years ago, it was covered by a big ocean. Archaeologists have discovered many whale fossils and skeletons. Some of these skeletons are longer than 15 meters. Visitors can walk along the trails and see the fossils in the same place they were found.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 Wadi El-Hitan is in the Western Desert. (.....)
- 2 All whale skeletons are shorter than 15 meters. (.....)
- 3 Visitors can see the fossils where they were found. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 4 Wadi El-Hitan is a world (heritage – sport – farm) site.
- 5 Some whale skeletons are (ten – fifty – fifteen) meters long.

D) Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE sentences:

"A day at a museum"

family – long time – bones – fun – new things



Learning Outcomes

● By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على:

Listening:

- understand the main ideas and specific details in short talks and interviews about transportation, industries, and Egypt's progress.

- يفهم الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل المحددة في المحادثات واللقاءات القصيرة حول المواصلات والصناعات وتقدم مصر.
- follow short spoken instructions about travel, building, or city life.
- يتبع التعليمات الشفوية القصيرة المتعلقة بالسفر أو البناء أو الحياة في المدينة.
- recognize key phrases and expressions related to innovation and development.
- يتعرف على العبارات والتعبيرات الأساسية المرتبطة بالابتكار والتنمية.

Speaking:

- use transportation and construction vocabulary in role-plays and discussions.
- يستخدم مفردات النقل والبناء في تبادل الأدوار والمناقشات.
- ask and answer questions about Egypt's new projects and industries.
- يطرح الأسئلة ويجيب عنها حول مشروعات مصر الجديدة وصناعاتها.
- compare Egypt's past and present using "used to / didn't use to" structures in spoken sentences.
- يقارن ماضى مصر وحاضرها باستخدام "used to / didn't use to" في الجمل المنطوقة.

Reading:

- read and understand informational texts about Egypt's new cities, roads, and industries.
- يقرأ و يفهم النصوص المعلوماتية حول المدن الجديدة في مصر والطرق والصناعات.
- identify main ideas, supporting details, and sequence of events in texts.
- يحدد الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل الداعمة وتسلسل الأحداث في النصوص.
- recognize and understand prefixes and suffixes (en-, -en) in context.
- يتعرف على البادئات واللواحق (مثل en- و -en) ويفهمها في السياق.

Writing:

- write short paragraphs describing Egypt's progress, including past and present comparisons.
- يكتب فقرات قصيرة تصف تقدم مصر، بما في ذلك مقارنات بين الماضي والحاضر.
- use "used to / didn't use to" correctly in sentences about Egypt's changes.
- يستخدم "used to / didn't use to" بشكل صحيح في الجمل التي تتحدث عن تغيرات مصر.
- write a descriptive paragraph about a modern Egyptian city.
- يكتب فقرة وصفية عن مدينة مصرية حديثة.



Lesson 1

Egypt's New Landscape



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشّر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



infrastructure
البنية التحتية



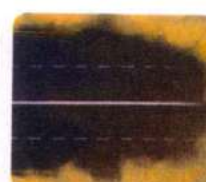
determination
الإصرار/العزيمة



highway
الطريق السريع



innovation
الابتكار



extend
يُمدّ/يوسع



goods
السلع/البضائع

Extra vocabulary

projects	مشاريع	services	خدمات	transportation	وسائل المواصلات
power supplies	إمدادات الطاقة	effectively	بفاعلية	roads	طرق
narrow (adj)	ضيق	tunnels	أنفاق	the New Administrative Capital	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
systems	أنظمة	economy	اقتصاد	prepared (adj)	جاهز
investment	استثمار	efforts towards	جهود نحو	progress	تقدم

Expressions and Phrases

in recent years	في السنوات الأخيرة	in order to	لكي
daily life	حياة يومية	the well-being	حياة أفضل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة					
Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
connect	يوصل	connected	extend	يوسع	extended
develop	يطور	developed	reach	يصل إلى	reached

Definitions

infrastructure	roads, bridges, and systems that help a country work الطرق، والكبارى، والأنظمة التي تساعد الدولة على العمل
determination	a strong will to keep trying until you succeed إرادة قوية للاستمرار والمحاولة حتى النجاح
innovation	new and creative ideas or methods أفكار أو طرق جديدة ومبدعة
extend	to make something larger or cover a wider area جعل شيء أكبر أو تغطية مساحة أوسع



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

How do new projects and modern roads change life in Egypt?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Egypt has started new **infrastructure**⁽¹⁾ projects in recent years.

These are projects and services, such as **transportation**⁽²⁾ and **power supplies**⁽³⁾, that the country uses in order to work **effectively**⁽⁴⁾. In the past, roads were **narrow**⁽⁵⁾, often crowded, and traveling between cities took a long time.

People had to be patient, and transporting **goods**⁽⁶⁾ was slow and difficult.

Today, skilled engineers are building modern highways, **bridges**⁽⁷⁾, and **tunnels**⁽⁸⁾ that connect all parts of the country. These projects show Egypt's **determination**⁽⁹⁾ to extend its road network and improve daily life. **The New Administrative Capital**⁽¹⁰⁾, along with the new bridges in Cairo, shows how the nation continues to grow and develop. Modern transportation systems allow people to travel faster, transport goods, and reach work and school more easily. Every new project not only improves Egypt's economy but also brings the country closer together, making it more connected and prepared for the future.

Egypt's investment in infrastructure shows its efforts towards projects to progress and the well-being of its people.

- | | |
|------|--------------------------|
| (1) | البنية التحتية |
| (2) | وسائل المواصلات |
| (3) | إمدادات الطاقة |
| (4) | بفاعلية |
| (5) | ضيق |
| (6) | بضائع |
| (7) | كبارى |
| (8) | أنفاق |
| (9) | الإصرار / العزيمة |
| (10) | العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة |

بدأت مصر في السنوات الأخيرة مشاريع بنية تحتية جديدة. هذه المشاريع تشمل مشاريع وخدمات مثل وسائل المواصلات وإمدادات الطاقة، التي تستخدمها الدولة لكي تعمل بفاعلية. في الماضي، كانت الطرق ضيقة وغالبًا مزدحمة، وكان السفر بين المدن يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا. كان على الناس أن يكونوا صابرين، وكانت نقل البضائع بطيئًا وصعبًا.

اليوم، يقوم مهندسون مهرة ببناء طرق سريعة حديثة، وكبارى، وأنفاق تربط جميع أنحاء البلاد. هذه المشاريع تُظهر إصرار مصر على توسيع شبكة الطرق وتحسين الحياة اليومية. تُظهر العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة، إلى جانب الكبارى الجديدة في القاهرة، كيف تستمر الأمة في النمو والتطور.

تتيح أنظمة النقل الحديثة للناس السفر بسرعة أكبر، ونقل البضائع، والوصول إلى العمل والمدرسة بسهولة أكبر. كل مشروع جديد لا يحسن اقتصاد مصر فحسب، بل يقرب البلد أكثر من بعضها، ويجعلها أكثر ترابطًا واستعدادًا للمستقبل.

يُظهر استثمار مصر في البنية التحتية جهودها نحو مشاريع التقدم وحياة أفضل لشعبها.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Egypt has started new infrastructure projects in recent years.
بدأت مصر في السنوات الأخيرة مشاريع بنية تحتية جديدة.
- ✓ These projects include transportation and power supplies to help the country work effectively.
تشمل هذه المشاريع وسائل النقل وإمدادات الطاقة لمساعدة البلاد على العمل بفعالية.
- ✓ In the past, roads were narrow and crowded, and transporting goods was slow and difficult.
في الماضي، كانت الطرق ضيقة ومزدحمة، وكان نقل البضائع بطيئًا وصعبًا.
- ✓ Today, skilled engineers are building modern highways, bridges, and tunnels that connect all parts of the country.
اليوم، يقوم مهندسون مهرة ببناء طرق سريعة حديثة، وكبارى، وأنفاق تربط جميع أنحاء البلاد.
- ✓ These projects show Egypt's determination to extend its road network and improve daily life.
تُظهر هذه المشاريع إصرار مصر على توسيع شبكة الطرق وتحسين الحياة اليومية.
- ✓ The New Administrative Capital and the new bridges in Cairo show the nation's continued growth and development.
تُظهر العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة والكبارى الجديدة في القاهرة استمرار نمو وتطور البلاد.
- ✓ Modern transportation systems allow people to travel faster, transport goods, and reach work and school more easily.
تتيح أنظمة النقل الحديثة للناس السفر بسرعة أكبر، ونقل البضائع، والوصول إلى العمل والمدرسة بسهولة أكبر.
- ✓ Egypt's investment in infrastructure shows its efforts towards progress and the well-being of its people.
يُظهر استثمار مصر في البنية التحتية جهودها نحو التقدم وحياة أفضل لشعبها.

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 Egypt is improving its (innovation – infrastructure – goods – creativity) through new roads, bridges, and tunnels.
- 2 Traveling between cities in the past took a long (food – time – clothes – books).
- 3 I have (determination – fear – stories – pain) to develop my life.
- 4 Modern (museums – library – transportation – learning) systems allow people to travel faster.
- 5 Every project (improves – uses – travels – plays) Egypt's economy.
- 6 We worked hard to be (sad – angry – prepared – hungry) for the future.



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1 Egypt is building new highways, bridges, and tunnels to improve its infrastructure. (.....)
- 2 In the past, roads were wide and traveling between cities was very fast. (.....)
- 3 Modern transportation systems help people move faster and transport goods more easily. (.....)
- 4 The government does not care about helping people in the future. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Before modern highways, transporting between cities was slow and difficult. **SB**
 a) goods b) people c) ideas d) messages
- 2 A country needs strong to support roads, bridges, schools, and hospitals.
 a) furniture b) goods c) infrastructure d) foods
- 3 She finished her homework because she had strong
 a) determination b) noise c) colors d) paint
- 4 Trucks travel on the every day.
 a) garden b) highway c) river d) playground
- 5 New ideas and help make better products.
 a) innovation b) transportation c) traffic d) highway
- 6 They will the road to reduce traffic.
 a) close b) hide c) break d) extend

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

workers – improves – highway – goods – power

Factories produce many goods every day and send them to different markets. To keep working, they need electricity and strong (1)..... supplies. These power supplies help machines run safely. Having good power supplies (2)..... the way the factory works and helps people get the (3)..... they need on time. Skilled (4)..... check the machines every day to keep them running well.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt has many roads that help people travel from one place to another. Big highways connect Cairo with Alexandria, the Red Sea, and Upper Egypt, making travel faster and easier. New bridges and roads improve traffic and help people reach their places safely. Public transportation, such as buses, the metro, and trains, helps millions of people move around every day. The government continues to build better roads to support growing communities. These improvements make transportation in Egypt more modern, tidy, and easy for everyone. Engineers and workers are always improving the roads.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** The general idea of the text is about
a) playing outdoors b) ancient roads
c) road safety rules d) roads and transportation in Egypt
- 2** Public transportation includes buses, the metro, and
a) trains b) bikes c) highways d) cars

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do the big highways connect Cairo with?
.....
- 4 What helps people reach their places safely?
.....
- 5 Who builds better roads for the country?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 plans – Egypt – extend – to – roads – its.
- 2 across – connect – cities – highways – Egypt – New.
- 3 make – Highways – easier – moving – much – goods.
- 4 people – does – help – good – How – transportation?

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 why is infrastructure important for a country
- 2 new bridges help trucks move goods quickly



Lesson 2

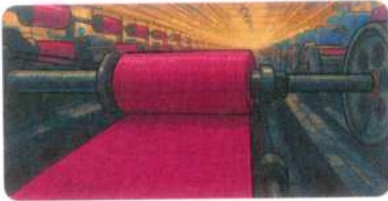
Building Egypt's Modern Economy



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشّر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



textile
النسيج



manufacture
صناعة / تصنيع



steel industry
صناعة الصلب



power source
مصدر طاقة



industrial (adj)
صناعي



self-reliant
معتمد على نفسه

Extra vocabulary

Africa	إفريقيا	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	mainly	أساسي
farming	الزراعة	local	محلي	jobs	وظائف
machines	آلات / معدات	products	منتجات	greatly	بشكل كبير
Mahalla	مدينة المحلة	high-quality	جودة عالية	fabrics	أقمشة
natural gas	الغاز الطبيعي	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	wind energy	طاقة الرياح

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
depend	يعتمد	depended	contribute	يساهم في	contributed
believe	يعتقد	believed	exist	يوجد	existed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
sell	يبيع	sold	light up	يضيء	lit up



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

Why are factories and industries important for a country?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Egypt is becoming one of the strongest **industrial**⁽¹⁾ countries in **Africa**⁽²⁾ and **the Middle East**⁽³⁾. In the past, life was very different. People used to **depend**⁽⁴⁾ mainly on farming and small local jobs, and most villages didn't use to have **factories**⁽⁵⁾ or machines. We used to get many products from other countries. Transportation used to be slow, and there were fewer jobs in cities.

Today, Egypt has changed greatly. The **textile**⁽⁶⁾ industry in cities like Mahalla produces high-quality clothes and fabrics. These products are sold in Egypt and other countries.

The food industry now **manufactures**⁽⁷⁾ many Egyptian products such as pasta, juice, and snacks. Egypt has also developed a strong steel industry, which helps build new roads, bridges, and houses.

New power sources such as natural gas, **solar energy**⁽⁸⁾, and **wind energy**⁽⁹⁾ are being used to create clean power for homes and factories. These changes have made Egypt more modern and more **self-reliant**⁽¹⁰⁾.

As the country builds new factories, more Egyptians find work and **contribute**⁽¹¹⁾ to a growing economy. People today are proud of their country and how it is developing every day.

Egypt's industries show how a nation can grow stronger when it believes in innovation, hard work, and teamwork. The factories that once didn't exist now light up the future for millions.

(1)	صناعي
(2)	إفريقيا
(3)	الشرق الأوسط
(4)	يعتمد
(5)	مصانع
(6)	نسيج
(7)	يُصنع
(8)	الطاقة الشمسية
(9)	طاقة الرياح
(10)	اعتماد ذاتي
(11)	يساهم في

مصر أصبحت واحدة من أقوى الدول الصناعية في إفريقيا والشرق الأوسط. في الماضي، كانت الحياة مختلفة جدًا. كان الناس يعتمدون أساسًا على الزراعة والوظائف المحلية الصغيرة، ولم تكن معظم القرى تحتوي على مصانع أو معدات. كنا نحصل على العديد من المنتجات من دول أخرى. كانت وسائل النقل بطيئة، وكانت الوظائف في المدن أقل. اليوم، تغيرت مصر كثيرًا. صناعة النسيج في مدن مثل المحلة تنتج ملابس وأقمشة عالية الجودة. تُباع هذه المنتجات في مصر وفي دول أخرى. صناعة الغذاء الآن تصنع العديد من المنتجات المصرية مثل المعكرونة والعصائر والوجبات الخفيفة. كما طورت مصر صناعة صلب قوية، تساعد في بناء الطرق والكباري والمنازل الجديدة. تُستخدم مصادر طاقة جديدة مثل الغاز الطبيعي والطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح لتوفير طاقة نظيفة للمنازل والمصانع. هذه التغييرات جعلت مصر أكثر حداثة وأكثر اعتمادًا على نفسها. مع بناء الدولة لمصانع جديدة، يجد المزيد من المصريين وظائف ويساهمون في اقتصاد نام. الناس اليوم فخورون ببلادهم وبكيفية تطورها كل يوم. تُظهر صناعات مصر كيف يمكن للأمة أن تصبح أقوى عندما تؤمن بالابتكار والعمل الجاد والعمل الجماعي. المصانع التي لم تكن موجودة سابقًا أصبحت الآن تُضيء المستقبل لملايين الناس.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Egypt is becoming a strong industrial country.
مصر أصبحت دولة صناعية قوية.
- ✓ In the past, people mainly worked in farming and small local jobs.
في الماضي، كان الناس يعملون أساسًا في الزراعة والوظائف المحلية الصغيرة.
- ✓ Long ago, villages had no factories or machines.
منذ زمن بعيد، لم تكن القرى تحتوي على مصانع أو آلات.
- ✓ Today, Egypt has modern industries like textiles, food, and steel.
اليوم، لدى مصر صناعات حديثة مثل النسيج والغذاء والصلب.
- ✓ New power sources like natural gas, solar, and wind energy are being used to create clean power for homes and factories.
تُستخدم مصادر طاقة جديدة مثل الغاز الطبيعي والطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح لتوفير طاقة نظيفة للمنازل والمصانع.
- ✓ Factories create more jobs for people in Egypt.
المصانع توفر المزيد من الوظائف للناس في مصر.
- ✓ Egypt's industries show that the country is growing stronger.
صناعات مصر تساعد الدولة على النمو بشكل أقوى.
- ✓ Hard work, teamwork, and new ideas make Egypt stronger.
العمل الجاد والعمل الجماعي والأفكار الجديدة تجعل مصر أقوى.

✓ Checkpoint Read and write (T) True or (F) False: SB

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① In the past, most Egyptians worked in factories. (.....)
- ② The textile industry in Mahalla produces fabrics and clothes. (.....)
- ③ Egypt didn't use to have big factories. (.....)
- ④ The food industry produces only snacks for export. (.....)
- ⑤ Egypt is now using solar and wind energy as power sources. (.....)

Language in Use

Used to / Didn't use to / Did ... use to

We use "used to" for things that happened regularly in the past, but not now.

نستخدم "used to" للأشياء التي كانت تحدث بانتظام في الماضي ولكنها لا تحدث الآن.

Used to

Usage:

الاستخدام:

We use "used to" to talk about past habits or states that are no longer true.

نستخدم (used to) للحديث عن عادات أو حالات كانت في الماضي ولم تعد صحيحة الآن.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + used to + (inf.) المصدر

e.g. Students used to write on small boards.

اعتاد الطلاب الكتابة على ألواح صغيرة.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Didn't use to

We use "didn't use to" to talk about things that didn't happen in the past.

نستخدم (didn't use to) للحديث عن الأشياء التي لم تحدث في الماضي (لم تكن معتادة الحدوث في الماضي).

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't use to + (inf.) المصدر

e.g. Schools didn't use to have computers.

لم تكن المدارس في الماضي تحتوي على أجهزة كمبيوتر.



Got it:

People didn't (used to) work in large factories in the past.

الإجابة الصحيحة هي (use to) لأن بعد did نستخدم use to.

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Did ... use to

We use "Did ... use to" to ask about past habits or situations.

نستخدم (Did ... use to) لسؤال عن عادات أو مواقف معتادة الحدوث في الماضي.

A: Did + subject (الفاعل) + use to + (inf.) المصدر ؟

B: Yes, + subject (الفاعل) + did.

B: No, + subject (الفاعل) + didn't.

e.g.

A: Did students use to study online?

B: Yes, they did.

OR

B: No, they didn't.



Got it:

Did she use to (rides) a bike?

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (ride) لأن بعد (use to) يأتي الفعل في المصدر.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① My brother used to (play – plays – played – playing) football when he was young.
- ② I didn't (use – uses – used – using) to wake up early when I was young.
- ③ My grandfather used to (write – wrote – writes – writing) letters.
- ④ Did your mother (uses – use – used – using) to drive a car?
- ⑤ In the past, people (used to – uses to – using – use) depend mainly on farming.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① I used to (studied) by myself.
- ② Small villages (doesn't) use to have factories or machines in the past.
- ③ (Does) she use to play sports when she was young?
- ④ We used to (went) to Alexandria in summer.
- ⑤ In the past, people didn't (used) to work online.

Quick Practice on Used to

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 People (use to) ride camels for long trips.
- 2 My grandparents (use to) live in a small village.
- 3 Students used to (wrote) letters instead of emails.
- 4 Did farmers (used to) plant different crops in the past?
- 5 Children (use) play outside in the past.
- 6 People (not used to) have smartphones.
- 7 Trains used to (was) slower than they are now.
- 8 (Do) students use to study without computers?
- 9 Did buses use to (ran) only in the morning?
- 10 Did your grandparents (used to) tell stories at night?
- 11 Cities (not used to) have tall buildings.
- 12 Cars (doesn't) use to travel very fast in past.
- 13 My father didn't (uses to) drink coffee.
- 14 The city (not use) to be so crowded.
- 15 Children didn't use to (learned) online.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 used – travel – to – by – We – bus.

.....

- 2 to – didn't – pasta – use – cook – Mom.

.....

- 3 play – they – here – to – Did – use?

.....

- 4 I – alone – didn't – to – use – walk.

.....

- 5 use – Did – to – stories – read – she?

.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The industry is important for making cars and buildings.
a) steel b) wood c) plastic d) gold
- 2 Solar energy is a clean for homes.
a) toy b) game c) power source d) snack
- 3 Students can ideas to improve the school garden.
a) hide b) forget c) contribute d) remove
- 4 Egypt is becoming one of the strongest countries.
a) musical b) industrial c) natural d) tourist
- 5 Teachers depend on textbooks only. SB
a) use b) used to c) uses d) didn't use
- 6 Villages use to have many factories in the past.
a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) didn't
- 7 The textile industry in Mahalla produces
a) toys b) clothes c) cars d) books
- 8 People today are proud because Egypt is every day.
a) sad b) developing c) stopping d) closing
- 9 My father didn't to study with computers.
a) uses b) used c) using d) use
- 10 My grandmother used to delicious food.
a) cooked b) cooks c) cook d) cooking
- 11 In the past, children used to in the streets. Super Question ?
a) play b) plays c) playing d) played

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

jobs – manufacture – steel – industrial – self-reliant

Egypt is becoming stronger because it is building more factories. These factories are in (1)..... areas where many people work. They (2)..... different products such as clothes, food, and tools. Because of this, Egypt is becoming more (3)....., as it can make more of its own goods without needing to buy everything from other countries. This helps people find more (4)..... and live better lives.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 People (use to) cook on fire.
- 2 My uncle (not use to) drive a car.
- 3 Farmers used to (grew) vegetables by hand.
- 4 Did children (used to) walk long distances?
- 5 My mother (use) make clothes at home.
- 6 People (not use to) watch television.
- 7 Ships used to (was) slower in the past.
- 8 (Do) people use to travel by boats?
- 9 Did teachers use to (gave) homework every day?
- 10 Did your friends (used to) write stories?
- 11 Towns (not used to) have many shops.
- 12 Children (doesn't) use to read online books.
- 13 My brother didn't (uses to) eat spicy food.
- 14 The village (do not) use to be noisy.
- 15 Students didn't use to (studied) on computers.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 is – power – industrial – growing – its – Egypt.

2 Mahalla – products – high-quality – makes – textile.

3 didn't – My father – to – use – travel – abroad.

5 Punctuate the following:

1 did people use to walk long distances

2 trucks carry different kinds of goods

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“Egypt’s industrial growth”

What do textile factories produce? – What products does the food industry make?





Lesson 3

Egypt Past and Present



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

mostly	غالبًا	fields	حقول
local shops	محلات محلية	textile factories	مصانع النسيج
abroad	في الخارج	the government	الحكومة

Extra vocabulary

many	العديد من	quickly	بسرعة
even	حتى	changes	التغيرات
proud (adj)	فخور	truly	حقًا/ بصدق

Expressions and Phrases

across the country	في جميع أنحاء البلاد	growing stronger	يزداد قوة
--------------------	----------------------	------------------	-----------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
produce	يُنتج	produced	support	يُدعّم	supported
Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
make	يصنع	made	become	يصبح	became

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

What did Egypt mainly depend on in the past?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Egypt used to depend mostly on farming, and most people worked in **fields**⁽¹⁾ or small **local shops**⁽²⁾.

There weren't many factories, and people didn't use to have machines to make goods quickly.

But today, Egypt has developed many new industries.

The **textile factories**⁽³⁾ produce clothes and fabrics that are sold **across the country**⁽⁴⁾ and even **abroad**⁽⁵⁾.

Engineers use solar and wind power to create clean energy.

The **government**⁽⁶⁾ also builds new roads, bridges, and new cities to support these **changes**⁽⁷⁾.

Egyptians are proud because their country has become more self-reliant and industrial.

Egypt truly doesn't look like it used to — it's **growing stronger**⁽⁸⁾ every day!

(1)	حقول
(2)	محلات محلية
(3)	مصانع النسيج
(4)	في جميع أنحاء البلاد
(5)	في الخارج
(6)	الحكومة
(7)	التغيرات
(8)	يزداد قوة



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Egypt used to depend on farming and most people worked in fields or small shops.
كانت مصر تعتمد قديمًا على الزراعة وكان معظم الناس يعملون في الحقول.
- ✓ There were not many factories.
لم تكن هناك مصانع كثيرة.
- ✓ People did not have machines to make goods quickly.
لم يكن لدى الناس آلات لصنع المنتجات بسرعة.
- ✓ Now, Egypt has many factories for clothes and fabrics.
الآن، لدى مصر العديد من المصانع للملابس والأقمشة.
- ✓ Engineers use solar and wind power for clean energy.
يستخدم المهندسون الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح لإنتاج طاقة نظيفة.
- ✓ Egyptians are proud because their country is growing stronger every day!
المصريون فخورون لأن بلدهم يصبح أقوى كل يوم!

كانت مصر تعتمد في الماضي بشكل كبير على الزراعة، وكان معظم الناس يعملون في الحقول أو في محلات محلية صغيرة. لم تكن هناك مصانع كثيرة، ولم يكن الناس يستخدمون آلات لصنع البضائع بسرعة. لكن اليوم، طوّرت مصر العديد من الصناعات الجديدة. تنتج مصانع الغزل والنسيج الملابس والأقمشة التي تُباع في جميع أنحاء البلاد وحتى في الخارج. يستخدم المهندسون الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح لإنتاج طاقة نظيفة. كما تبنى الحكومة طرقًا وجسورًا ومدنًا جديدة لدعم هذه التغيرات. ويشعر المصريون بالفخر لأن بلدهم أصبح أكثر اعتمادًا على نفسها وأكثر تصنيعًا. إن مصر اليوم لا تبدو كما كانت في السابق — فهي تزداد قوة كل يوم!

Pronunciation



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Prefix (en-)

comes at the beginning of the word (means to cause to be or to put into).

تأتي في بدايه الكلمة (بمعنى أن يجعل شيئاً يكون أو يضعه في حاله معينه).

enrich	يثري
enlarge	يوسع
encourage	يشجع
endanger	يهدد
enable	يمكن
ensure	يؤكد
enclose	يرفق / يحيط

e.g. The teacher **encouraged** us to try harder.

شجعنا المعلم على المحاولة بجد أكثر.

e.g. New roads **enrich** the country's development.

الطرق الجديدة تحسن تطوير الدولة.

Suffix (-en)

comes at the end of the word (means to make or to become).

تأتي في نهاية الكلمة (بمعنى يجعل أو يصبح).

widen	يوسع
darken	يظلم / يغمق
lighten	يضيء / يخفف
shorten	يختصر
deepen	يعمق
soften	تليين
brighten	ينير

e.g. They will **widen** the bridge next year.

سوف يوسعون الجسر في العام المقبل.

e.g. The clouds **darkened** the afternoon sky.

غُمّت الغيوم سماء بعد الظهر.

✓ Checkpoint Circle the odd one out: SB

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① enlarge – enrich – enable – book
- ② shorten – darken – widen – quickly
- ③ encourage – rain – enable – ensure
- ④ darken – lighten – deepen – school
- ⑤ enclose – endanger – enlarge – beauty



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 In the past, Egypt used to depend mostly on
 a) farming b) phones c) games d) cars
- 2 People didn't use to have to make goods quickly.
 a) machines b) toys c) animals d) fruits
- 3 Textile factories produce and fabrics.
 a) tools b) tables c) cars d) clothes
- 4 People plant trees to the soil. SB
 a) rich b) richness c) richer d) enrich
- 5 Engineers use solar and wind power to create energy.
 a) cold b) loud c) bright d) clean
- 6 Egypt has become more and industrial.
 a) worse b) self-reliant c) noisy d) weak
- 7 They will the road next year. SB
 a) widen b) enwide c) wide d) wider
- 8 Egypt is stronger every day. Super Question ?
 a) losing b) falling c) growing d) making

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

government – machines – poor – industries – shops

Egypt used to depend mostly on farming. Most people worked in fields or small local (1)..... There weren't many factories, and people didn't have (2)..... to make goods quickly. Today, Egypt has developed new (3)..... Engineers use solar and wind power to make clean energy. The (4)..... builds roads, bridges, and new cities. Egyptians are proud because their country is growing stronger every day.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt's industry is growing and changing every year. Long ago, people depended mostly on farming, and there were only a few factories. Today, many factories make important products for the country. The textile factories make clothes and fabrics. Food factories make pasta, juice, and snacks that people use every day. Egypt also has steel factories that help build roads, bridges, and houses. The clean energy from the sun and wind helps power these factories. Because of all these changes, Egypt is becoming stronger, more modern, and able to depend on itself.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) the growth of Egypt's industry b) animals living in Egypt
 c) cooking traditional Egyptian food d) playing sports in schools
- 2 Food factories in Egypt make
 a) computers b) gold c) phones d) pasta

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did people depend on long ago?

.....

- 4 What do steel factories help build?

.....

- 5 How is Egypt changing today?

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 now – Why – important – is – energy – clean?

.....

- 2 Today, – the – is – country – stronger – growing.

.....

- 3 developed – has – many – Egypt – industries – new.

.....

- 4 connect – helps – What – cities – the – new?

.....

- 5 people – farming – on – before – Did – depend?

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 egypt is becoming more industrial today

.....

- 2 how does solar power help factories

.....



Lessons 4 and 5



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

New Alamein City	مدينة العلمين الجديدة	coastal cities	المدن الساحلية	northern coast	الساحل الشمالي
the Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط	golden (adj)	ذهبي	luxury	فاخر
walkways	ممرات / أرصفة للمشى	universities	جامعات	tourist spot	مكان سياحي
magnificent (adj)	رائع / مذهل	complex	مجمع	the god Amun	الإله آمون
statues	تماثيل	remarkable	رائع / استثنائي	symbols of	رموز لـ

Extra vocabulary

history	التاريخ	beauty	الجمال	modern life	حياة حديثة
hotels	فنادق	planning	تخطيط	lively city	مدينة حيوية
description	وصف	giant (adj)	ضخم	columns	أعمدة
hieroglyphics	الهيروغليفية	grand (adj)	ضخم	gates	بوابات

Expressions and Phrases

one of Egypt's most	واحدة من أهم... في مصر	a city of the future	مدينة من المستقبل
Egypt's vision	رؤية مصر	known for	مشهور بـ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
combine	يجمع	combined	fill with	يملئ بـ	filled with
include	يحتوي	included	reflect	يعكس	reflected
turn	يحول	turned	honor	يكرم	honored
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	remain	يبقى	remained

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
lie	يقع	lay	meet	يقابل	met

New Alamein City مدينة العلمين الجديدة



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

Where is New Alamein City located?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

New Alamein City⁽¹⁾ is one of Egypt's most modern coastal cities⁽²⁾. It lies on the beautiful northern coast, where the blue waters of the Mediterranean Sea⁽³⁾ meet golden sandy beaches. The city is designed to be a smart place that combines⁽⁴⁾ history, beauty, and modern life. Wide roads, green parks, and tall glass buildings⁽⁵⁾ make it look like a city of the future. Visitors can enjoy peaceful beaches, luxury

hotels, and beautiful walk ways filled with⁽⁶⁾ palm trees. The city also includes⁽⁷⁾ universities, shopping centers⁽⁸⁾, and cultural areas that make it more than just a tourist spot⁽⁹⁾; it's a new home for many Egyptians. New Alamein reflects Egypt's vision⁽¹⁰⁾ for progress, showing how innovation and planning can turn the desert into a modern, lively city full of life.

- | | |
|------|----------------------|
| (1) | مدينة العلمين |
| (2) | المدن الساحلية |
| (3) | البحر الأبيض المتوسط |
| (4) | يجمع |
| (5) | مبانٍ زجاجية |
| (6) | ممتلئ بـ |
| (7) | تحتوي |
| (8) | مراكز تسوق |
| (9) | مكان سياحي |
| (10) | رؤية مصر |

مدينة العلمين الجديدة هي واحدة من أكثر المدن الساحلية حداثة في مصر. تقع على الساحل الشمالي الجميل، حيث تلتقي مياه البحر الأبيض المتوسط الزرقاء بالشواطئ الرملية الذهبية. تم تصميم المدينة لتكون مكانًا ذكيًا يجمع بين التاريخ والجمال والحياة العصرية. تجعلها الطرق الواسعة والحدائق الخضراء والمبانٍ الزجاجية الطويلة تبدو كمدينة من المستقبل. يمكن للزوار الاستمتاع بالشواطئ الهادئة والفنادق الفاخرة والممرات الجميلة المليئة بأشجار النخيل. وتضم المدينة أيضًا جامعات ومراكز تسوق ومناطق ثقافية تجعلها أكثر من مجرد مكان سياحي؛ فهي موطن جديد للعديد من المصريين. تعكس العلمين الجديدة رؤية مصر للتقدم، وتظهر كيف يمكن للابتكار والتخطيط أن يحوّل الصحراء إلى مدينة حديثة مليئة بالحياة.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ New Alamein City is a new and modern city in Egypt.
مدينة العلمين الجديدة هي مدينة جديدة وحديثة في مصر.
- ✓ It is on the northern coast by the Mediterranean Sea.
تقع على الساحل الشمالي بجانب البحر الأبيض المتوسط.
- ✓ The city has beautiful blue waters and golden sandy beaches.
تتميز المدينة بمياه زرقاء جميلة وشواطئ رملية ذهبية.
- ✓ It is designed to be a smart and modern place.
تم تصميمها لتكون مكانًا ذكيًا وحديثًا.
- ✓ There are wide roads, green parks, and tall glass buildings.
يوجد بها طرق واسعة وحدائق خضراء ومبانٍ زجاجية طويلة.
- ✓ Visitors can enjoy peaceful beaches and luxury hotels.
يمكن للزوار الاستمتاع بالشواطئ الهادئة والفنادق الفاخرة.
- ✓ The city also has universities, shops, and cultural places.
وتضم المدينة أيضًا جامعات ومحلات ومناطق ثقافية.
- ✓ New Alamein shows Egypt's plan to build a modern and lively city.
تُظهر العلمين الجديدة خطة مصر لبناء مدينة حديثة ممتلئة بالحياة.

How to write a descriptive paragraph



Writing Tips

- ✓ Start with where the place is.
ابدأ بذكر المكان.
- ✓ Describe what it looks like (colors, size, features).
صف شكله (الألوان، الحجم، المميزات).
- ✓ Mention what people can do there.
اذكر ما يمكن للناس فعله هناك.
- ✓ End with your opinion or feeling about the place.
اختتم برأيك أو شعورك حول المكان.

Your Turn

Write your own descriptive paragraph about a city you visited before. Think about what makes the city special and what you would like to describe most.

A Flyer about a Famous Place in Egypt

منشور عن مكان مشهور في مصر



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Description:

Luxor Temple⁽¹⁾ is a magnificent⁽²⁾ ancient complex⁽³⁾ in the city of Luxor. It was built to honor the god Amun and the great pharaohs of Egypt. The temple is known for its giant statues⁽⁴⁾, tall stone columns, and beautiful hieroglyphics.

Visitors can walk through its grand gates⁽⁵⁾ and imagine life in ancient Egypt. It remains⁽⁶⁾ one of the country's most remarkable symbols of history and culture.



(1)	معبد الأقصر
(2)	رائع
(3)	مجمع
(4)	تماثيل ضخمة
(5)	بوابات ضخمة
(6)	تبقى



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Luxor Temple is a very old and beautiful place in Egypt. معبد الأقصر مكان قديم وجميل جدًا في مصر.
- ✓ It is in the city of Luxor. يقع في مدينة الأقصر.
- ✓ The temple was built to honor the god Amun. تم بناء المعبد لتكريم الإله آمون.
- ✓ It also honors the great pharaohs of Egypt. كما يكرم الفراعنة العظماء في مصر.
- ✓ The temple has giant statues and tall stone columns. يحتوي المعبد على تماثيل ضخمة وأعمدة حجرية طويلة.
- ✓ It has beautiful hieroglyphics on the walls. ويحتوي على هيروغليفية جميلة على الجدران.
- ✓ Visitors can walk through its big gates and imagine ancient life. يمكن للزوار السير عبر أبوابه الكبيرة وتخيل الحياة في مصر القديمة.
- ✓ Luxor Temple is an important symbol of Egypt's history and culture. معبد الأقصر هو رمز مهم لتاريخ مصر وثقافتها.

وصف:

معبد الأقصر هو مجمع قديم رائع في مدينة الأقصر. تم بناؤه لتكريم الإله آمون والفراعنة العظماء في مصر. المعبد مشهور بتماثيله العملاقة وأعمدته الحجرية الطويلة والهيروغليفية الجميلة.

يمكن للزوار السير عبر بواباته الضخمة وتخيل الحياة في مصر القديمة. يظل واحدًا من أكثر رموز التاريخ والثقافة روعة في البلد.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The city was to be modern and smart.
a) broken b) designed c) removed d) destroyed
- 2 Many people prefer living in a/an apartment with new technology.
a) modern b) old c) broken d) dark
- 3 The painting the artist's feelings about nature.
a) reflects b) washes c) builds d) jumps
- 4 New Alamein is a city near the sea.
a) rainy b) rocky c) coastal d) deep
- 5 New Alamein tries to history and modern life.
a) forget b) hide c) combine d) dance
- 6 The room had soft beds and great food.
a) luxury b) dirt c) dust d) noise
- 7 Many students dream of studying in big
a) universities b) kitchens c) gardens d) beaches
- 8 The Alexandria Library is a popular spot.
a) hospital b) tourist c) bank d) street



2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

honor – complex – Temple – gates – hieroglyphics

Many ancient places around the world are truly magnificent. At Luxor (1)....., the walls are covered with (2)....., which are old Egyptian symbols and drawings. The temple was built to (3)..... the god Amun and the great pharaohs of Egypt. Visitors can walk through its grand (4)..... and imagine life in ancient Egypt. It remains one of the country's most remarkable symbols of history.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

New Alamein City is one of Egypt's newest modern cities on the Mediterranean coast. It is designed to be a clean, organized, and smart city with wide streets and beautiful beaches. Many people visit New Alamein to relax, enjoy the sea, and spend time in its parks and cafés. The city also has tall glass buildings, luxury hotels, and cultural areas for events and concerts. New Alamein continues to grow quickly, making it an important place for tourism, work, and a bright future for Egypt. New Alamein reflects Egypt's vision for progress, showing how innovation and planning can turn the desert into a modern city.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The underlined word "innovation" means
a) luxury life b) new ideas c) industry d) culture
- The city continues to grow and is important for Egypt's
a) future b) weather c) ancient d) sports only

B Answer the following questions:

- What makes New Alamein City a modern place?

.....

- Why do people visit New Alamein City?

.....

- Summarize the text in two sentences.

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- visitors – Coastal cities – many – attract – year – every.

.....

- people – do – walkways – enjoy – the – Why?

.....

- can – real – see – Where – innovation – we?

.....

5 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"New Alamein City"

sandy beaches – luxury hotels

.....
.....
.....



Unit 4

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

infrastructure	البنية التحتية	determination	الإصرار / العزيمة
highway	الطريق السريع	innovation	الابتكار
extend	يُمد / يوسع	goods	السلع / البضائع
projects	مشاريع	services	خدمات
transportation	وسائل المواصلات	power supplies	إمدادات الطاقة
effectively	بفاعلية	roads	طرق
narrow	ضيق	crowded	مزدحم
tunnels	أنفاق	bridges	كبارى

Lesson (2)

textile	النسيج	manufacture	صناعة / يصنع
steel industry	صناعة الصلب	power source	مصدر طاقة
industrial	صناعي	self-reliant	مُعتمد على نفسه
machines	الآلات / معدات	Africa	إفريقيا
the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	mainly	أساسي
farming	الزراعة	local	محلي

Lesson (3)

mostly	غالبًا	fields	حقول
local shops	محلات محلية	textile factories	مصانع النسيج
abroad	في الخارج	the government	الحكومة
quickly	بسرعة	even	حتى
changes	التغيرات	proud	فخور
truly	حقًا / يصدق	growing stronger	يزداد قوة

Lessons (4 and 5)

New Alamein City	مدينة العلمين الجديدة	coastal cities	مدن ساحلية
northern coast	الساحل الشمالي	the Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط
luxury	فاخر	walkways	ممرات / أرصفة للمشى
history	تاريخ	universities	جامعات
remarkable	رائع / استثنائي	tourist spot	مكان سياحي
Luxor Temple	معبد الأقصر	magnificent	رائع / مذهل

Language in Use

Used to / Didn't use to / Did ... use to

Affirmative	Negative	Question
Subject (الفاعل) + used to + (inf) الفعل في المصدر.	Subject (الفاعل) + didn't use to + (inf) الفعل في المصدر.	Did + subject (الفاعل) + use to + (inf) الفعل في المصدر?
To talk about past habits or states that are no longer true.	To talk about things that didn't happen in the past.	To ask about past habits or situations.
<i>e.g.</i> Students used to write on small boards.	<i>e.g.</i> Schools didn't use to have computers.	<i>e.g.</i> Did students use to study online?

Unit 4

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالإنجليزية	الكلمة بالعربية
infrastructure	تقدم
transportation	خدمات
power supplies	ضيق
highways	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
systems	اقتصاد
tunnels	الإصرار/ العزيمة

Lesson 2

industrial	وظائف
textiles	معتمد على نفسه
products	الطاقة الشمسية
steel	أقمشة
natural gas	مصادر الطاقة
wind energy	الآت/معدات

Lesson 3

quickly	حقول
local shops	في الخارج
proud	يزداد قوة
changes	محلي
government	غالبًا

Lessons 4 and 5

coastal cities	الساحل الشمالي
gates	جامعات
columns	مبانٍ زجاجية
walkways	فاخر
tourist spot	المناطق الثقافية

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present

Past

Present

Past

connect

sold

improve

extended

believed

imagine

exist

lay

light up

remain

”تسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب“.

Unit 4 | WRITING TIME

تجميعة لأهم
موضوعات
الوحدة



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about "Your trip to New Alamein City":

- o I visited it with + مع من ذهبت.
- o We did + ما قمنا بفعله.
- o The city has + اذكر ما يوجد بالمدينة.
- o I liked + اذكر الأشياء التي أحببتها في المدينة.
- o I hope to + اكتب ما تتمنى القيام به.

"My trip to New Alamein City"

I visited New Alamein City with my family. The city is modern and beautiful. We walked along the beaches and enjoyed the sun and sea. The parks, tall buildings, and clean streets were amazing. I liked the walkways with palm trees. I hope to visit it again soon.

How to write about "Visiting Luxor Temple":

- o I visited Luxor Temple + اذكر مع من ذهبت.
- o The temple is + صف المعبد.
- o It has + اذكر ما يوجد بالمعبد.
- o We imagined + اكتب ما تتخيله عندما ترى المعبد.
- o I liked learning about + اذكر ما تعلمته.

"Visiting Luxor Temple"

Last summer, I visited Luxor Temple with my family. The temple is ancient and magnificent, with giant statues, tall columns, and beautiful hieroglyphics. We walked through the grand gates and imagined life in ancient Egypt. I liked learning about the history and culture of the temple.

1 Fill in the blanks using the words from the box:

innovation – determination – infrastructure – extend – highways

- 1 Egypt has improved its through new roads, bridges, and tunnels.
- 2 The government shows great in completing national projects.
- 3 Teams of engineers work hard to build modern to connect all parts of the country.
- 4 The country continues to its road network every year.
- 5 Modern projects reflect Egypt's creativity and

2 Choose the correct form of "used to":

- 1 My parents (use / used to / didn't use to) study with computers.
- 2 Teachers (use to / used to / didn't use) depend on textbooks only.
- 3 (Did / Do / Does) students use to write on small boards?
- 4 Children today (didn't use to / don't use to / used to) learn online.
- 5 In the past, students (used to / use to / did use) walk long distances to school.

3 Complete each word with en- or -en:

- 1 The teacher will (large) the text so we can see it better.
- 2 Parents should (courage) their children every day.
- 3 Clouds began to (dark) the sky before the storm.
- 4 Good schools can (rich) a whole village.
- 5 The government plans to (wide) the roads next year.



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 In the past, people in Egypt had many factories and machines. (.....)
- 2 Today, Egypt has factories that make clothes, food, and steel. (.....)
- 3 Technology helps factories work slower than before. (.....)
- 4 Many young people learn new skills to work in modern jobs. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Engineers design new to connect cities quickly.
a) highways b) beaches c) statues d) fabrics
- 2 Luxor Temple has large and tall stone columns.
a) statues b) factories c) highways d) goods
- 3 I to play with my neighbors when I was young.
a) uses b) use c) using d) used
- 4 She didn't use to long distances to school.
a) walk b) walks c) walking d) walked

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

innovation – modern – proud – Textile – highways

Egypt has many new infrastructure projects. Engineers build (1)....., bridges, and factories. These projects show Egypt's progress and make the country more (2)..... and self-reliant. People today are (3)..... of their country and how it is developing every day. Egypt's industries show how a nation can grow stronger when it believes in (4)....., hard work, and teamwork.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last summer, I visited New Alamein City with my family. The city is beautiful and modern, with wide roads, green parks, and tall buildings. We walked along the beaches and enjoyed the sun and sea. We also visited shopping centers, universities, and cultural areas. The city is very clean and peaceful, and I liked the walkways with palm trees. I felt happy to see how modern and lively the city is. The new city shows Egypt's progress and innovation, and I hope to visit New Alamein again next year.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I liked the with palm trees.
a) walkways b) highways c) tunnels d) gardens
- 2 The underlined word "universities" means places where young people
a) swim b) learn c) visit d) live

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How can you describe New Alamein City?
- 4 Which places did we visit in the city?
- 5 What does the new city show?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 People (use to) live in small houses.
- 2 My father (not used to) drive motorcycles.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 has – Temple – stone – tall – Luxor – columns.
- 2 energy – clean – create – electricity – helps – Solar.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 did you use to play tennis
- 2 textile factories produce soft colorful fabrics

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

"A Day at an old temple"

Which temple did you visit? – What did you learn or imagine there?

.....

.....

.....

.....





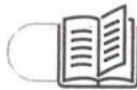
Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Egypt is building new infrastructure like roads and bridges. (.....)
- 2 The textile industry makes clothes and fabrics. (.....)
- 3 People use solar energy for clean power in Egypt. (.....)
- 4 Engineers do not help Egypt grow. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 People on farming in the past for their jobs.
a) depended b) enjoyed c) visited d) reflected
- 2 Infrastructure projects help the of people.
a) machines b) furniture c) books d) well-being
- 3 Salma used to the guitar.
a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
- 4 Did you to ride a bike?
a) uses b) using c) used d) use

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

develop – economy – engineers – goods – factories

Egypt has many industrial areas with large factories. These (1)..... manufacture textiles and fabrics for people across the country. The textile industry helps Egypt's (2)..... grow and provides many jobs. Skilled (3)..... and workers make sure the factories run well. The country continues to (4)..... modern industries. Egypt has also developed a strong steel industry, which helps build new roads, bridges, and houses.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Last weekend, I visited an old temple with my family. The temple has giant statues, tall columns, and beautiful hieroglyphics. We walked through the grand gates and imagined life in ancient Egypt. Engineers and workers help take care of the infrastructure of the temple. Visitors learn about Egyptian culture, history, and traditions. The temple is an important tourist spot, attracting many people every year. It shows Egypt's innovation and planning in keeping historical sites. I felt amazed by the buildings design and beauty of the temple I enjoyed my visit very much.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We walked through the grand of the temple.
a) gates b) tunnels c) highways d) factories
- 2 The underlined word "hieroglyphics" means
a) temples b) books c) statues d) writing

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does the temple have?
- 4 What do engineers and workers do at the temple?
- 5 What can visitors learn about?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Farmers used to (grew) fruits in their gardens.
- 2 Did children (used to) play outside every day?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 coastal – visit – cities – tourists – Which – do?
.....
- 2 innovation – The – modern – city – great – shows.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 people are more self-reliant now
- 2 what industries are growing in Egypt

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

"My favorite city by the sea"
beautiful beaches – modern places





1 Read and complete the dialog:

temple – hieroglyphics – remarkable – engineers – grand – honor

Hamza: Wow, Malek! Look at these (1) _____ walkways.

Malek: Yes! The (2) _____ is truly magnificent.

Hamza: It was built to (3) _____ the great pharaohs.

Malek: I love the remarkable (4) _____ on the walls.

Hamza: Everything here is so grand and amazing!

Malek: I agree! This temple is really a (5) _____ place.

10

A) Language Functions

B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Women (use) make bread at home.

2 People (not used to) eat fast food.

3 Cars used to (is) slower than today.

4 (Do) people use to go to school by bike?

5 Did teachers use to (gave) tests every week?

10

3 Choose the correct answer:

1 Did your friends (used to – using to – use to) read newspapers?

2 Towns (didn't used to – didn't use to – doesn't use to) have big parks.

3 Children (aren't – don't – didn't) use to watch cartoons online.

4 My sister didn't (used to – use to – uses to) like vegetables.

5 The city didn't use to (has – have – had) electricity.

6 Skilled engineers design new (tunnels – beaches – statues) to connect cities.

7 Luxor Temple reflects Egypt's ancient (culture – infrastructure – highways) and traditions.

8 New Alamein City is located on the (northern – southern – eastern) coast.

9 Egypt has started many new (factories – infrastructure – goods) projects like roads, bridges, and tunnels.

10 Trucks carry different kinds of (games – goods – songs) from factories to markets.

10

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

1 roads – columns – bridges – tunnels

2 shorten – darken – quickly – widen

3 solar energy – wind energy – temples – clean power

4 darken – school – lighten – deepen

5 industrial – factories – manufacture – beaches

10

5 Read the following passage, then answer the following questions:

Last year, Egypt started many new infrastructure projects. Engineers built roads, bridges, and factories to connect cities and help the economy grow. The textile factories manufacture fabrics and clothes for local and foreign markets. People also used solar energy to create clean power for homes and businesses. These projects showed innovation and progress in the country. Egypt is becoming more modern and self-reliant. I am proud to see how the country is developing and improving life for its people.

10

A Write "True" or "False":

1 Engineers only built bridges.

2 Textile factories produced clothes and fabrics.

3 The projects helped the economy grow.

(.....)

(.....)

(.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

4 People use (candles – solar energy – water) to create clean power.

5 The projects show innovation and (noise – progress – danger).

D) Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE sentences:

"My trip to Luxor"

family – travel – temple – statues – hieroglyphics

10

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The workers will the old monument to make it look new.
a) carved b) restore c) notice d) walk
- 2 The archaeologists have an ancient tomb near the river.
a) discovers b) discovered c) discovering d) discover
- 3 A person who makes beautiful objects by hand is a/an
a) craftsman b) archaeologists c) tour guide d) ruler
- 4 A/An is a preserved body from ancient times.
a) archaeologist b) expert c) mummy d) temple
- 5 Many rulers have temples for ancient gods like Thoth.
a) design b) designed c) designs d) designing
- 6 The bones found by archaeologists were very old
a) chambers b) skeletons c) cities d) monuments
- 7 The experts moved the temple to higher ground.
a) does b) did c) has d) have
- 8 The travelers walked along the ancient to see the Pyramids.
a) monument b) trail c) chamber d) discovery
- 9 The hieroglyphs carved on the walls are important
a) symbols b) skeleton c) craftsman d) mummy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A discovered – painted – workers – understand – archaeologists

Deir el-Medina is an ancient village where the craftsmen who built the royal tombs once lived. They were skilled (1)..... and artists. They have (2)..... and carved the tombs of the kings in the Valley of the Kings. The archaeologists have (3)..... drawings and notes on pieces of pottery in their homes. Deir el-Medina helps us (4)..... daily life in ancient Egypt.

B

chamber – pattern – mummy – tour guide – proud

Last week, we went to the ancient museum. The (1)..... explained the history of the old temples. Inside a secret (2)....., we saw a real (3)..... carefully wrapped in cloth. Walking through the museum made me feel like I had traveled back in time. I was (4)..... of the country's rich heritage.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The archaeologists have(discover) a hidden chamber.
- 2 Tourists(don't visit) the ancient temple yet.
- 3(Have) the craftsman carved the new pattern carefully?
- 4 The temple has(stand) for over five hundred years.
- 5(Do) the workers restored the old monument successfully?
- 6 Many visitors have(appreciate) the intricate designs.
- 7 The ruler has(protect) the city walls for many years.
- 8(Did) the tour guide explained the mummies clearly?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 The – contained – site – burial – many – skeletons – old.
.....
- 2 discovered – mummy – the – ancient – Who?
.....
- 3 king – did – the – How – border – the – protect?
.....

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The government invested a lot in new to support cities.
a) textile b) infrastructure c) determination d) visitor
- 2 The workers will the road to connect the towns.
a) extend b) travel c) design d) manufacture
- 3 Her helped her finish the difficult project on time.
a) goods b) determination c) innovation d) transportation
- 4 Trucks are used to goods between factories and markets.
a) transporting b) transports c) transported d) transport
- 5 The new connects the two major cities quickly.
a) highway b) walkway c) textile d) complex
- 6 Workers didn't have advanced machines to help in manufacturing.
a) used b) use to c) use d) used to
- 7 Egypt's government works hard to life for everyone.
a) innovate b) explain c) improve d) write
- 8 The factory produces for clothing and other products.
a) goods b) textile c) statues d) hieroglyphic

- 9 Did you use to on weekends?
 a) travel b) traveling c) travels d) traveled
- 10 Tourists love visiting this because it is beautiful and historic.
 a) industry b) tourist spot c) complex d) steel

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

future – past – Sea – coastal – designed

New Alamein City is one of Egypt's most modern (1)..... cities. It lies on the beautiful northern coast, where the blue waters of the Mediterranean (2)..... meet golden sandy beaches. The city is (3)..... to be a smart place that combines history, beauty, and modern life. Wide roads, green parks, and tall glass buildings make it look like a city of the (4)..... .

B

manufacture – determination – industrial – transport – textile

The new factory focuses on producing (1)..... for local markets. Engineers use modern machines to (2)..... products quickly and efficiently. Trucks help to (3)..... goods from the factory to the city. Workers showed great (4)..... while solving problems every day.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My grandparents (use to) travel by horse carts.
- 2 Factories (use to) produce goods manually.
- 3 (Does) engineers use to design modern infrastructure?
- 4 In the past, cities (use) have narrow roads.
- 5 People (not use) live in coastal cities years ago.
- 6 (Do) factories use to transport goods by camels?
- 7 Teachers didn't (used to) explain lessons with technology.
- 8 Tourists (use to) visit temples in large numbers.
- 9 The steel industry (use to) produce low-quality products before modernization.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 month – will – the – highway – Engineers – next – extend.

- 2 transport – Ships – cities – the coastal – across – goods.

- 3 tourists – Where – statues – can – the giant – see?

Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The archaeologists noticed a strange on the tomb walls.
a) mystery b) pattern c) discover d) trail
- 2 The king's tomb was a huge under the desert sand.
a) skeleton b) trail c) monument d) chamber
- 3 The workers have the road.
a) repair b) repaired c) repairing d) repairs
- 4 Omar used to glasses.
a) wears b) wearing c) wore d) wear
- 5 Today, Egypt is more because it produces many of its own goods.
a) self-reliant b) busy c) crowded d) clean

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

visitor – reliant – progress – reflects – innovation

Egypt has many beautiful coastal cities that attract tourists every year. The government works hard to make real (1)..... in transportation. One (2)..... said the new roads make travel easier. These cities (3)..... Egypt's vision for progress, showing how (4)..... and planning can turn the desert into a modern city.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The experts have (restore) the ancient monument carefully.
- 2 People used to (working) in large factories in the past.
- 3 Salma (have) lived in Luxor for ten years.
- 4 My little brother used to (drank) milk every day.
- 5 My grandpa didn't (used to) speak English well.
- 6 The team has (win) the match.

Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The country invests heavily in projects like tunnels and roads.
a) innovation b) textile c) infrastructure d) power
- 2 In the past, the streets didn't to be crowded.
a) use b) using c) used d) uses
- 3 The ancient is covered with symbols and carvings.
a) hieroglyphic b) textile c) complex d) temple
- 4 Lara has already her room.
a) cleans b) clean c) cleaned d) cleaning
- 5 A is a room where people were buried in ancient Egypt.
a) discovery b) chamber c) restore d) mummy

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 guide – design – explained – temple – the – A tour.
.....
- 2 temple – Luxor – is – symbol – of history – a remarkable.
.....
- 3 discover – they – When – the – did – fossil?
.....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Engineers have (build) a stronger power source.
- 2 People (not use) to buy food online.
- 3 The ruler (have protect) the city borders for years.
- 4 Children (not use to) learn online.
- 5 We (has) seen this movie before.



1 Read and complete the dialog:

innovation – determination – improve – infrastructure – goods – extend

Omar : Hi, Salma! What is your team working on today?

Salma : We're planning a new (1)..... to help the city grow.

Omar : That's great! Will it (2)..... the main roads?

Salma : Yes, and this project will also (3)..... how companies move their
(4)..... across the country!

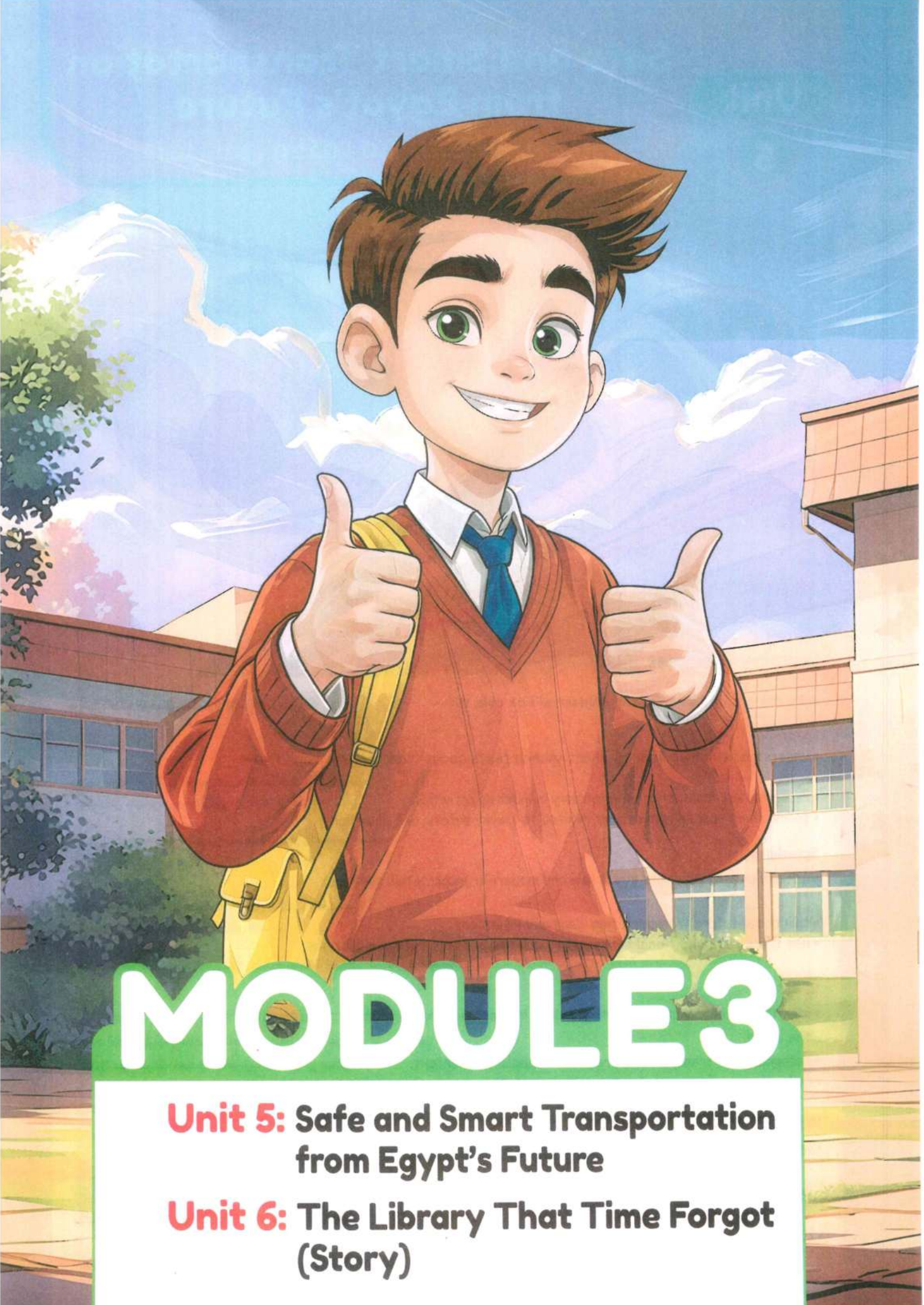
Omar : Amazing! Improving (5)..... helps the country's progress.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

1	design	tour guide	archaeologist	craftsman	.....
2	purify	baker	clarify	simplify	.....
3	extend	travel	took	transportation	.....
4	Luxor	New Alamein	Cairo	temple	.....
5	got	grew	built	light up	.....

3 Choose the correct answer:

- Modern projects reflect Egypt's creativity and (**highway** – innovation – temples).
- Hassan has (**break** – breaks – broken) his phone.
- Lama didn't use to (**watches** – watch – watched) cartoons at night.
- The (**ruler** – archaeologist – craftsman) found a beautifully decorated ancient tomb.
- To fix something that was broken is to (**discover** – hide – extend) it.
- We (**is** – have – has) waited for the bus for one hour.



MODULE 3

Unit 5: Safe and Smart Transportation
from Egypt's Future

Unit 6: The Library That Time Forgot
(Story)

Unit

5

Safe and Smart Transportation from Egypt's Future

نقل آمن وذكي من مستقبل مصر

Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

• understand the main idea of short spoken texts about transportation and travel.

• recognize key transportation vocabulary in listening activities.

• follow short spoken instructions related to travel, safety, and directions.

- يفهم الفكرة الرئيسية لنصوص شفوية قصيرة حول النقل والسفر.

- يتعرف على مفردات أساسية خاصة بوسائل النقل في أنشطة الاستماع.

- يتبع التعليمات الشفوية القصيرة المتعلقة بالسفر والسلامة والإرشادات.

Speaking:

• ask and answer questions about new and modern transportation systems.

• talk about future transportation ideas and inventions.

• use the First Conditional correctly to discuss possible future situations.

- يسأل ويجيب عن أسئلة حول أنظمة النقل الجديدة والحديثة.

- يتحدث عن أفكار واختراعات وسائل النقل المستقبلية.

- يستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى بشكل صحيح لمناقشة المواقف المستقبلية المحتملة.

Reading:

• identify main ideas and supporting details in short reading texts about transportation in Egypt and around the world.

• recognize new transportation related vocabulary in context.

• make simple inferences about how transportation can change people's lives in the future.

- يحدد الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل الداعمة في نصوص قصيرة عن النقل في مصر وحول العالم.

- يتعرف على مفردات جديدة متعلقة بوسائل النقل في سياقها.

- يستخلص استنتاجات بسيطة حول كيف يمكن لوسائل النقل أن تغيّر حياة الناس في المستقبل.

Writing:

• write an email suggesting or describing future transportation solutions.

• write First Conditional sentences about transportation and the environment.

• create a short magazine article or brochure describing future transportation ideas.

- يكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا يقترح أو يصف حلولاً مستقبلية لوسائل النقل.

- يكتب جملاً باستخدام الحالة الشرطية الأولى حول النقل والبيئة.

- ينشئ مقالة قصيرة لمجلة أو كتّيب يصف أفكارًا لوسائل النقل المستقبلية.



Lesson 1

Next Stop, Giza

Main vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، اشر وقل:



announcement
إعلان



passengers
ركاب



ticket machine
ماكينة التذاكر



elevator
مصعد



digital screen
شاشة رقمية



escalator
سلم متحرك



pay by card
يدفع بالبطاقة



smart doors
أبواب ذكية

Extra vocabulary

Cairo Metro	مترو القاهرة	line	خط	next stop	المحطة القادمة
faster (adj)	أسرع	cleaner (adj)	أكثر نظافة	automatically	تلقائياً
station	محطة	clear (adj)	واضح	cash	نقدي
electricity	كهرباء	access	دخول	lights	أضواء
LED	اللمبات الموفرة للطاقة	environment	بيئة	riding	ركوب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
save	يوفر	saved	use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
pay	يدفع	paid	stand back	يتراجع للخلف	stood back

Definitions

ticket machine	a machine where you buy tickets	آلة تشتري منها التذاكر
announcement	speaking to give information to many people	التحدث لتقديم معلومات لعدد كبير من الناس
digital screen	an electric device for showing words or pictures	جهاز كهربائي لعرض كلمات أو صور
elevator	a moving platform that goes up or down in a building	وسيلة متحركة تصعد أو تهبط داخل مبنى
escalator	a moving staircase	سلم متحرك



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

Have you ever ridden on the metro before?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

"Good morning, passengers. Welcome to the Cairo Metro⁽¹⁾.

This is Line⁽²⁾ 3, the Green Line. The next stop is Giza Station.

The Giza Metro⁽³⁾ is now faster and cleaner than before. New trains have smart doors⁽⁴⁾ that open and close automatically⁽⁵⁾.

Inside the train, there are big digital screens. They show the next station and the time. You can also hear clear announcements⁽⁶⁾ in Arabic and English.

At Giza Station, there are new ticket machines⁽⁷⁾. You can pay by card, a phone, or cash. There are also elevators⁽⁸⁾ and escalators⁽⁹⁾ for easy access.

The metro uses smart electricity. The lights are LED and the trains save electricity when they stop. This makes the metro better for the environment⁽¹⁰⁾.

Please stand back from the doors. The next stop is Giza. Thank you for riding with us."

(1)	مترو القاهرة
(2)	خط
(3)	مترو الجيزة
(4)	أبواب ذكية
(5)	تلقائياً
(6)	إعلانات
(7)	ماكينة التذاكر
(8)	مصاعد
(9)	سلالم متحركة
(10)	البيئة

Think

Why is the new metro better for the environment?

"صباح الخير، أيها الركاب. مرحباً بكم في مترو القاهرة. هذا هو الخط ٣، الخط الأخضر. المحطة التالية هي محطة الجيزة. أصبح مترو الجيزة الآن أسرع وأنظف من قبل. تحتوي القطارات الجديدة على أبواب ذكية تفتح وتغلق تلقائياً. داخل القطار، توجد شاشات رقمية كبيرة. تعرض هذه الشاشات المحطة التالية والوقت. كما يمكنكم سماع إعلانات واضحة باللغتين العربية والإنجليزية. في محطة الجيزة، هناك آلات تذاكر جديدة. يمكنكم الدفع بالبطاقة أو الهاتف أو نقداً. كما توجد أيضاً مصاعد وسلالم متحركة لتسهيل الوصول. يستخدم المترو كهرباء ذكية. اللامبات من نوع موفر للطاقة وتوفر القطارات الكهرباء عند توقفها. هذا يجعل المترو أفضل للبيئة. يرجى الابتعاد عن الأبواب. المحطة التالية هي الجيزة. شكراً لاستخدامكم المترو معنا."



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The new trains are faster and cleaner. القطارات الجديدة أسرع وأنظف.
- ✓ The trains have smart doors that open and close automatically. القطارات تحتوي على أبواب ذكية تفتح وتغلق تلقائيًا.
- ✓ Inside the train, there are big digital screens showing the next station and the time. داخل القطار، هناك شاشات رقمية كبيرة تُظهر المحطة التالية والوقت.
- ✓ Passengers can hear clear announcements in Arabic and English. يمكن للركاب سماع إعلانات واضحة باللغتين العربية والإنجليزية.
- ✓ At Giza Station, there are new ticket machines, elevators, and escalators. في محطة الجيزة، هناك آلات تذاكر جديدة ومصاعد وسلالم متحركة.
- ✓ The metro uses smart electricity and LED lights, which are good for the environment. يستخدم المترو كهرباء ذكية ولمبات موفرة للطاقة، وهذا جيد للبيئة.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 The next (shop – stop – place – area) on this line is Giza Station.
- 2 The new trains are faster and (noisy – smaller – cleaner – slower).
- 3 In the station, you can hear clear (games – announcements – stories – stops) in Arabic and English.
- 4 The trains (waste – save – move – start) electricity when they stop.

2. Read and write (T) True or (F) False: SB

- 1 The announcement is for Line 3. (.....)
- 2 The metro is slower than before. (.....)
- 3 Passengers can pay by card, phone, or cash. (.....)
- 4 The announcements are only in English. (.....)

Practice



Lesson 1

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 The Cairo Metro Line 3 is called the Red Line. (.....)
- 2 The new trains do not have smart doors. (.....)
- 3 At Giza Station, there are elevators. (.....)
- 4 The metro uses LED lights and smart electricity to help save energy. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Passengers can hear on the train.
a) digital screens b) announcements c) escalators d) tickets
- 2 All must buy a ticket before they travel.
a) elevators b) passengers c) announcements d) smart doors
- 3 You can buy a ticket at the
a) ticket machine b) escalator c) digital screen d) announcement
- 4 The station has a/an that goes up and down.
a) announcement b) smart door c) passenger d) elevator
- 5 Inside the station, you can see the next stop on the screen.
a) paper b) hard c) digital d) wooden
- 6 Passengers can by card when they buy a ticket.
a) pay b) use c) listen d) open
- 7 The train has doors that open and close automatically.
a) heavy b) wooden c) smart d) small
- 8 A/An is a moving staircase.
a) door b) escalator c) sign d) elevator

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

escalator – automatically – environment – electricity – LED

The metro in Cairo is now modern and easy to use. The trains have smart doors that open and close (1)....., so passengers stay safe. Inside the metro, the lights are (2)....., and they use less (3)..... . This helps the (4)..... because it keeps the air cleaner. With these new changes, the metro is faster, brighter, and better for everyone who travels in the city.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The old metro in Cairo was simple and sometimes crowded, but it helped many people travel around the city. The trains were slower, and the stations did not have many modern things. Today, the new metro is much better and more comfortable. The trains are faster and cleaner, and the stations have more helpful things. Passengers can see clear signs, hear announcements, and move easily through wide waiting areas. The new metro also uses better technology, which makes traveling safer and easier for everyone. These changes show how transportation in Egypt is improving for the future.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The underlined word "Passengers" means
 a) people who sell tickets b) people who travel by metro
 c) people who improve the metro d) people who drive the metro
- The old trains were than the new trains.
 a) faster b) cleaner c) slower d) brighter

B Answer the following questions:

- What is better about the new metro trains?
- What can passengers see in the new metro?
- Summarize the text in two sentences.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- station – screens – the – show – Digital – next.

- and – travel – escalators – make – Elevators – easy.

- faster – metro – The – before – is – than.

- next – Station – is – Giza – The – stop.

6 Punctuate the following:

- Passengers hear announcements in arabic and English

- why is the new metro better for the environment



Lesson 2

Egypt's New Monorail



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

monorail	مونوريل	electric bus	أتوبيس كهربائي
way	طريقة	system	نظام
single track	مسار واحد	ground	الأرض
properly	بشكل صحيح	rules	قواعد
smartly	بذكاء	easily	بسهولة

Extra vocabulary

exciting (adj)	مثير	project	مشروع
important (adj)	هام	each	كل
bright (adj)	ساطع	safe (adj)	آمن

Expressions and Phrases

make no smoke	لا يسبب الدخان	into the future	إلى المستقبل
---------------	----------------	-----------------	--------------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
travel يسافر	traveled	traveled	continue يستمر	continued	continued
connect يصل	connected	connected	block يحجب/ يعيق	blocked	blocked
follow يتبع	followed	followed	move يتحرك	moved	moved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
run on يسير على/ يعمل بـ	ran on	run on	grow ينمو (يتطور)	grew	grown

Egypt's New Monorail and Electric Buses

المونوريل الجديد والأتوبيسات الكهربائية في مصر



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

How are the electric buses different from the old ones?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Egypt is changing the way people travel. If these new transportation systems⁽¹⁾ continue to grow⁽²⁾ in Cairo and Giza, the cities will become faster, cleaner, and smarter.

One exciting project is the monorail, a train that runs on a single track⁽³⁾ above the ground. It will connect⁽⁴⁾ important places quickly. At each station, passengers will find ticket machines, digital screens, and announcements. Some stations also have elevators and escalators, so people will travel more easily.

Passengers must buy a ticket and listen to announcements. They mustn't block⁽⁵⁾ the smart doors. The electric bus will help the environment because it runs on electricity and makes no smoke⁽⁶⁾. Passengers will be able to⁽⁷⁾ pay by card or phone. The bus has smart doors and bright LED lights. People will stay safe if they stand or sit properly⁽⁸⁾, but they won't follow⁽⁹⁾ the rules if they eat or drink on the bus.

With the monorail and electric buses, Egypt will move smartly⁽¹⁰⁾ into the future.



- أنظمة وسائل المواصلات
- تطور
- مسار واحد
- تصل
- يعيق/ يحجب
- دخان
- قادر على
- بشكل صحيح
- يتبع
- يتحرك بذكاء

تغير مصر طريقة تنقل الناس. إذا استمرت هذه الأنظمة الجديدة للنقل في النمو في القاهرة والجيزة، ستصبح المدن أسرع وأنظف وأكثر ذكاءً. أحد المشاريع المثيرة هو المونوريل، وهو قطار يسير على مسار واحد فوق الأرض. سيوصل الأماكن المهمة بسرعة. في كل محطة، سيجد الركاب آلات تذاكر وشاشات رقمية وإعلانات. بعض المحطات تحتوي أيضًا على مصاعد وسلالم متحركة، حتى يسافر الناس بسهولة أكبر. يجب على الركاب شراء تذكرة والاستماع للإعلانات. ويجب ألا يعيقوا الأبواب الذكية. ستساعد الأتوبيسات الكهربائية البيئة لأنها تعمل بالكهرباء ولا تُصدر دخانًا. سيتمكن الركاب من الدفع بالبطاقة أو الهاتف. يحتوي الأتوبيس على أبواب ذكية ولمبات الموفرة للطاقة ساطعة. سيظل الناس بأمان إذا وقفوا أو جلسوا بشكل صحيح، لكنهم لن يتبعوا القواعد إذا أكلوا أو شربوا في الأتوبيس. مع المونوريل والأتوبيسات الكهربائية، ستنتقل مصر بذكاء نحو المستقبل.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Egypt is changing the way people travel. مصر تغير طريقة تنقل الناس.
- ✓ New transportation will make Cairo and Giza faster, cleaner, and smarter. وسائل النقل الجديدة ستجعل القاهرة والجيزة أسرع وأنظف وأكثر ذكاء.
- ✓ The monorail is a new train that moves above the ground. المونوريل هو قطار جديد يتحرك فوق الأرض.
- ✓ The monorail will connect important places quickly. المونوريل سيربط الأماكن المهمة بسرعة.
- ✓ Stations will have ticket machines, digital screens, elevators, and escalators. ستحتوي المحطات على آلات تذاكر وشاشات رقمية ومصاعد وسلالم متحركة.
- ✓ Passengers must buy tickets and listen to announcements. يجب على الركاب شراء التذاكر والاستماع إلى الإعلانات.
- ✓ The electric bus will help the environment because it makes no smoke. الأتوبيس الكهربائي سيساعد البيئة لأنها لا تصدر دخاناً.
- ✓ Egypt will have a smart future with the monorail and electric buses. ستحصل مصر على مستقبل ذكي مع المونوريل والأتوبيسات الكهربائية.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Read and write (T) True or (F) False: SB

- 1 If Egypt keeps improving transportation, Cairo and Giza will become smarter cities. (.....)
- 2 Passengers will find ticket machines and digital screens at the stations. (.....)
- 3 The electric bus makes a lot of smoke. (.....)
- 4 Eating or drinking on the bus will be allowed. (.....)

2. Read again and answer: SB

- 1 What makes the new electric buses better for the environment?
.....
- 2 What will happen if passengers block the smart doors?
.....
- 3 What can passengers find at the monorail stations?
.....

Language in Use

First Conditional (Future Possibilities)

الحالة الشرطية الأولى (الاحتمالات المستقبلية)

Usage:

- We use the First Conditional to talk about possible situations in the future.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن المواقف الممكنة في المستقبل.

- Use the First Conditional when you want to say, "If this happens now, then that will happen in the future."
استخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لتقول: "إذا حدث هذا الآن، سوف يحدث ذلك في المستقبل."

Affirmative Form:

	Condition جملة الشرط	Result جواب الشرط
If	subject + present simple (مضارع بسيط)	subject + will + (inf) الفعل في المصدر
e.g.	If → you take the monorail	you will arrive faster.
e.g.	If → we use electric buses	the environment will be cleaner.



Got it:

If you study hard, you will (**passed**) the exam.

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**pass**) لأن بعد (**will**) يأتي الفعل في المصدر.

لاحظ الاختصار : **won't** = will not

Remember

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

(I/ We/ They/ You) + (**inf**) ... الفعل في المصدر

(He/ She/ It) + (**inf**) + **s, es, ies** ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. - I **get** up at 6 in the morning.

e.g. - She **gets** up at 6 in the morning.

- We **play** by cards every day.

- The monorail **runs** on a single track.

Negative Form: صيغة النفي:

(I/ We/ They/ You) + **don't** + (inf) المصدر

e.g. We **don't have** eggs for breakfast.

(He/ She/ It) + **doesn't** + (inf) المصدر

e.g. He **doesn't have** a car.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① If it (**rain** – rains – rained – raining) tomorrow, we will stay at home.
- ② If they don't hurry, they (**miss** – will miss – missed – missing) the bus.
- ③ If the weather is good, we (**do** – went – will go – going) to the beach.
- ④ If you invite me, I (**will come** – comes – come – came) to the party.
- ⑤ If you (**drank** – drinking – drinks – drink) water, you will feel better.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① If they hurry, they will (**catches**) the bus.
- ② If I (**saw**) him today, I will tell him the news.
- ③ If Mona studies hard, she (**is**) pass the exam.
- ④ If I (**has**) enough money, I will buy a new phone.
- ⑤ If you (**listened**) carefully, you will answer correctly.

Quick Practice On First Conditional (Future Possibilities)

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 If Hassan (eat) healthy food, he will feel better.
- 2 If I finish my homework, I will (watched) a movie.
- 3 If you touch fire, you will (gets) burned.
- 4 If they (ran) fast, they will win the race.
- 5 If we eat dinner early, we (went) to the park.
- 6 If he (wake) up late, he will miss the bus.
- 7 If you (will call) your friend, he will answer the phone.
- 8 If the sun (shine), we will play outside.
- 9 If I clean my room, my mom (is) happy.
- 10 If we save money, we will (bought) a gift.
- 11 If I (pressing) the button, the doors will open.
- 12 If the train (stopping), the passengers will get off.
- 13 If Omar doesn't (wears) a coat, he will feel cold.
- 14 If the digital screens (works), passengers will see the next station.
- 15 If the metro is clean, people (would enjoyed) their ride.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 ticket – Passengers – a – buy – must.

.....

- 2 are – buses – electric, – If – the city – cleaner – will be.

.....

- 3 into – move – will – Egypt – the future – smartly.

.....

- 4 use – rains, – it – we – If – umbrellas – will.

.....

- 5 smart – They – the – doors – block – mustn't.

.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Cairo is improving its systems for faster travel.
a) determination b) school c) transportation d) restaurants
- 2 The runs on a single track above the ground.
a) bus b) monorail c) car d) bicycle
- 3 Passengers can buy tickets from ticket
a) machines b) benches c) escalators d) schools
- 4 Inside the train, there are showing the next station.
a) doors b) chairs c) digital screens d) fans
- 5 Passengers mustn't the smart doors.
a) paint b) open c) block d) touch
- 6 Electric buses are good for the
a) street b) market c) park d) environment

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

smoke – single – station – monorail – follow

The new monorail in Cairo is very modern and fast. It moves on a (1)....., track above the ground. Passengers must (2)..... the rules to stay safe while riding. The (3)..... is good for the city because it produces no (4)....., helping the environment stay clean. Riding the monorail is comfortable and easy, and it makes traveling in Cairo faster and more enjoyable for everyone.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 If Lama (inviting) me to her birthday, I will be happy.
- 2 If my mother (cook) dinner, I will not buy pizza.
- 3 If my father doesn't fix the car, we (will taking) a taxi.
- 4 If you (drank) enough water, you will stay healthy.
- 5 If we get up early, we will (went) to school early.
- 6 If Amr (help) his father, he will be happy.
- 7 If you (called) me, I will answer.
- 8 If the teacher explains the lesson, the students will (understanding).

- 9 If you (turned) on the lights, the station will look bright.
- 10 If we (will save) money, we will buy a new toy.
- 11 If the train (arrived) on time, passengers will get on quickly.
- 12 If the doors open, we (would) enter the metro.
- 13 If the announcements (be) clear, everyone will understand.
- 14 If the escalator (work), people will go upstairs easily.
- 15 If he doesn't drive carefully, he (be) have an accident. 

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 its – improving – Cairo – systems – is – transportation.
.....
- 2 before – Passengers – travel – buy – they – tickets.
.....
- 3 the stations – to – announcements – Listen – in – the.
.....
- 4 People – upstairs – elevators – use – to – go.
.....
- 5 electricity – Using – helps – less – environment – the.
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 electric buses help protect the environment
.....
- 2 what type of lights do buses have
.....

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:



"The electric bus"

transportation – electricity

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 3

Cleaner Transportation, Cleaner Planet

Main vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



eco-friendly
صديق للبيئة



pollution
تلوث



self-driving
ذاتية القيادة



renewable energy
طاقة متجددة

Extra vocabulary

vehicles	مركبات	fuel	وقود
less	أقل	noise	ضوضاء
without	بدون	accidents	حوادث
natural sources	مصادر طبيعية	planet	كوكب
petrol	بنزين	diesel	وقود ديزل
generations	أجيال	fresh (adj)	نقى

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
harm يضر / يؤذي	harm <u>ed</u>	harm <u>ed</u>	reduce يقلل	reduced	reduced
avoid يتجنب	avoid <u>ed</u>	avoid <u>ed</u>	protect يحمي	protect <u>ed</u>	protect <u>ed</u>

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
mean يعنى	meant	meant	run out ينفد	ran out	run out



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

What can people do to stop air pollution?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Many new **vehicles**⁽¹⁾ are becoming **eco-friendly**⁽²⁾, which means they do not **harm**⁽³⁾ the environment. For example, electric buses and trains use less **fuel**⁽⁴⁾ and make less noise. This helps reduce **pollution**⁽⁵⁾ in cities and keeps the air fresh for everyone.

Some cars today are even **self-driving**⁽⁶⁾. These cars use cameras and computers to move safely on the road without a driver. They can stop at red lights, **slow down**⁽⁷⁾ for people on foot, and avoid **accidents**⁽⁸⁾. In the future, self-driving cars may help people travel more safely and easily.

Many countries are also using **renewable energy**⁽⁹⁾ to power their transportation.

Renewable energy comes from **natural sources**⁽¹⁰⁾ like the sun, wind, and water. It never runs out and is better for our planet than petrol or diesel.

If everyone chooses eco-friendly transportation and uses renewable energy, the world will become a cleaner and safer place. Together, we can help reduce pollution and protect Earth for future generations.

(1)	مركبات
(2)	صديق للبيئة
(3)	يضر / يؤذي
(4)	وقود
(5)	تلوث
(6)	ذاتية القيادة
(7)	يبطئ
(8)	حوادث
(9)	طاقة متجددة
(10)	مصادر طبيعية

Think

How do self-driving cars move safely?

في المستقبل، سيسافر الناس بطرق أذكى وأنظف. أصبحت العديد من المركبات الجديدة صديقة للبيئة، وهذا يعني أنها لا تضر البيئة. فعلى سبيل المثال، تستخدم الأتوبيسات والقطارات الكهربائية وقودًا أقل وتُصدر ضجيجًا أقل. يساعد هذا في تقليل التلوث في المدن والحفاظ على نقاء الهواء للجميع. بعض السيارات اليوم ذاتية القيادة. تستخدم هذه السيارات الكاميرات والكمبيوترات للتحرك بأمان على الطريق دون سائق. يمكنها التوقف عند الإشارات الحمراء، والإبطاء للمشاة، وتجنب الحوادث. وفي المستقبل، قد تساعد السيارات ذاتية القيادة الناس على السفر بشكل أكثر أمانًا وسهولة. كما تستخدم العديد من الدول الطاقة المتجددة لتشغيل وسائل النقل. تأتي الطاقة المتجددة من مصادر طبيعية مثل الشمس والرياح والمياه. وهي لا تنفذ أبدًا وتُعد أفضل لكوكبنا من البنزين أو الديزل. إذا اختار الجميع وسائل نقل صديقة للبيئة واستخدموا الطاقة المتجددة، سيصبح العالم مكانًا أنظف وأكثر أمانًا. معًا، يمكننا المساعدة في تقليل التلوث وحماية الأرض للأجيال القادمة.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ In the future, people will travel in cleaner and smarter ways.
في المستقبل، سيسافر الناس بطرق أنظف وأذكى.
- ✓ New vehicles like electric buses and trains help reduce pollution.
تساعد المركبات الجديدة مثل الأتوبيسات والقطارات الكهربائية في تقليل التلوث.
- ✓ Some cars can drive by themselves using cameras and computers.
بعض السيارات يمكنها القيادة بنفسها باستخدام الكاميرات والكمبيوترات.
- ✓ Self-driving cars can make travel safer and easier.
يمكن للسيارات ذاتية القيادة أن تجعل السفر أكثر أماناً وسهولة.
- ✓ Many countries use renewable energy from the sun, wind, and water.
تستخدم العديد من الدول الطاقة المتجددة من الشمس والرياح والمياه.
- ✓ Using eco-friendly transportation helps protect the Earth.
يساعد استخدام وسائل النقل الصديقة للبيئة في حماية الأرض.
- ✓ If everyone travels in clean ways, the world will be safer and healthier.
إذا سافر الجميع بطرق نظيفة، سيصبح العالم أكثر أماناً وصحة.
- ✓ Together, we can keep our environment clean for future generations.
معاً، يمكننا الحفاظ على بيئتنا نظيفة لأجيال المستقبل.

✓ Checkpoint Read and write (T) True or (F) False: SB

- ① Self-driving cars need a person to control them all the time. (.....)
- ② Renewable energy can run out easily. (.....)
- ③ Eco-friendly transportation helps protect the environment. (.....)
- ④ Using renewable energy can help reduce pollution. (.....)
- ⑤ Self-driving cars use cameras and computers to move safely. (.....)

Pronunciation



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Triphthong is a vowel sound that combines three vowel sounds together in one syllable.

المقطع الصوتي الثلاثي هو صوتٌ متحرك يجمع بين ثلاثة أصوات متحركة معًا في مقطع واحد.

ow-er

Say "hour": start with "ow", then glide to "er",

قل "hour": ابدأ بصوت "ow"، ثم انتقل تدريجيًا إلى "er".

e.g. hour	ساعة
our	ملكنا
flower	وردة
tower	برج
power	قوة
shower	دش

ay-er

Say "player": it begins with "play" and ends with "er"

قل "player": تبدأ بـ "play" وتنتهي بـ "er".

e.g. player	لاعب
layer	طبقة
mayor	عمدة
slayer	قاهر (قاتل)

✓ **Checkpoint** Cross out the word that doesn't have the same sound: **SB**

① power - hour - shower - paper

② layer - player - tiger - slayer

③ tower - teacher - flower - sour



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Electric buses and trains are for the environment.
a) pollution b) eco-friendly c) bad d) friends
- 2 Self-driving cars use to move safely.
a) cameras b) seats c) noise d) red lights
- 3 Drivers must at red lights.
a) hurry b) reduce c) run d) stop
- 4 Eco-friendly vehicles do not harm the
a) environment b) classroom c) playground d) computer
- 5 Self-driving cars can slow down for
a) animals only b) people on foot c) buildings d) toys
- 6 Renewable energy comes from natural sources like the sun,, and water.
a) plastic b) wind c) metal d) paper
- 7 pollution helps keep the air clean.
a) Protecting b) Producing c) Reducing d) Using
- 8 We must protect the Earth for future
a) generations b) transportations c) computers d) screens

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

accidents – runs – generations – pollution – red

In the future, people will use safer and smarter transportation. Cars will stop at (1)..... lights automatically and slow down to avoid (2)..... on busy roads. Many vehicles will use clean energy that never (3)..... out, helping keep our planet healthy. When we choose eco-friendly ways to travel, we protect the Earth and make life better for future (4)..... who will live here after us.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

People around the world use many different kinds of transportation to travel from place to place. On land, cars, buses, and trains help people move quickly across cities and countries. Bicycles and scooters are also popular for short trips because they are easy to use and good for the environment. In the air, airplanes carry passengers long distances in a short time. On water, boats and ships help transport people and goods across seas and rivers. Each type of transportation has an important role in daily life, helping people travel safely, save time, and stay connected.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about types of
 a) transportation b) hobbies c) wild animals d) weather
- 2 help people travel long distances over the ocean.
 a) Scooters b) Cars c) Ships d) Bicycles

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Which vehicles help people move quickly on land?

- 4 Why are bicycles and scooters popular for short trips?

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 renewable – does – Where – energy – from – come?

- 2 are – new – Many – eco-friendly – vehicles.

- 3 stop – cars – red – at – automatically – lights – Self-driving.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 cars that use less fuel help the environment

- 2 how do self-driving cars move safely on roads



Lessons 4 and 5

Smart and Green Transportation



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

vision	رؤية	idea	فكرة
underground	تحت الأرض	electric trains	قطارات كهربائية
comfortably	براحة تامة	technology	تكنولوجيا
seat belts	أحزمة الأمان	streets	الشوارع
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	brochure	منشور تعريفى
editor	محرر	benefits	فوائد

Extra vocabulary

quieter	أكثر هدوءاً	mobile apps	تطبيقات الهاتف المحمول
digital signs	لافتات رقمية		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
hope	يأمل	hoped	hope	يتخيل	imagined
carry	يحمل	carried	wait	ينتظر	waited



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

What makes transportation safe and smart?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

- Clear Subject
عنوان واضح
- Greeting
التحية
- Friendly Opening
مقدمة ودية
- Topic Introduction
مقدمة الموضوع
- Main Idea
الفكرة الرئيسية
- Topic Details
تفاصيل الموضوع
- Personal Opinion
رأي شخصي
- Closing
الخاتمة
- Signature
التوقيع

New message

To: nada@example.com

From: dina@example.com

Subject: My Vision for Egypt's Future Transportation

Dear Nada,

How are you? I hope you're doing well.

I want to tell you about my idea for Egypt's future transportation.

In the future, I imagine Egypt will have faster, cleaner, and smarter ways to travel.

There will be underground electric trains that connect cities in just minutes and self-driving buses that carry passengers safely and comfortably.

These vehicles will use renewable energy, so the air will be cleaner and the streets quieter, with much less pollution.

Technology will also make travel easier.

Passengers will pay for tickets using smart cards or mobile apps.

The stations will have digital signs in both English and Arabic to help travelers.

People must wait in line, mustn't block the doors, and must wear seat belts in cars.

If Egypt builds more eco-friendly transportation, the streets will be less crowded and the environment will be better for everyone.

I'm really excited about this smart and green future!

Best wishes,

Dina

Send

عزيزتي ندى،

كيف حالك؟ أمل أن تكوني بخير.

أود أن أخبرك عن فكري لمستقبل النقل في مصر.

في المستقبل، أتخيل أن مصر سيكون لديها طرق أسرع وأنظف وأكثر ذكاءً للسفر.

"ستكون هناك قطارات كهربائية تحت الأرض تربط المدن في غضون دقائق، وأتوبيسات ذاتية القيادة تنقل الركاب بأمان وراحة".

"ستستخدم هذه المركبات الطاقة المتجددة، لذلك سيكون الهواء أنظف والشوارع أكثر هدوءًا، مع تلوث أقل بكثير".

"ستجعل التكنولوجيا السفر أسهل أيضًا".

"سيقوم الركاب بدفع ثمن التذاكر باستخدام البطاقات الذكية أو تطبيقات الهاتف المحمول".

"ستحتوي المحطات على شاشات رقمية باللغتين الإنجليزية والعربية لمساعدة المسافرين. يجب على الناس الانتظار في الصف، وعدم إعاقة الأبواب، وارتداء أحزمة

الأمان في السيارات".

"إذا قامت مصر ببناء وسائل نقل صديقة للبيئة أكثر، ستكون الشوارع أقل ازدحامًا وستكون البيئة أفضل للجميع".

أنا متحمسة جدًا لهذا المستقبل الذي والأخضر!

مع أطيب التمنيات،

دينا

New message

To: إيميل المرسل إليه

From: إيميل الراسل

Subject: Clear Subject (عنوان واضح)

Dear Nada, ابدأ بتحية لصديقك

e.g. How are you? I hope you're doing well.

اكتب جملة ودية

Topic Introduction: What the email is about.

مقدمة الموضوع: ما يتحدث عنه البريد الإلكتروني

e.g. I want to tell you about my idea for Egypt's future transportation.

Main idea:

الفكرة الرئيسية

e.g. There will be underground electric trains that connect cities in just minutes and self-driving buses that carry passengers safely and comfortably.

Details:

تفاصيل

Passengers will pay for tickets using smart cards or mobile apps.

The stations will have digital signs in both English and Arabic to help travelers.

Personal Opinion:

رأيك الشخصي

e.g. I'm really excited about this smart and green future!

Closing:

خاتمة: أنه بجملة ودودة

e.g. Best wishes,

Signature:

وقع باسمك

Dina

Send



How to create a brochure about transportation in the year 2050:

Transportation Magazine "Future Egypt"

1. Cover Page

صفحة الغلاف

Title: Future Egypt 2050

صفحة العنوان: مصر المستقبل 2050

Picture/drawing of future transportation

صورة/رسم لوسائل النقل المستقبلية

Your name as an editor

اسمك كمحرر

2. New Vehicles

المركبات الجديدة

Describe 2 new vehicles.

وصف مركبتين جديدتين

Add drawings/pictures.

اضف رسومات/ صورًا

3. Transportation Rules

قواعد النقل

Add small signs/icons.

إضافة علامات/رموز صغيرة.

4. Benefits for the Environment

فوائد للبيئة

Explain how future transportation helps Egypt.

شرح كيف تساعد وسائل النقل المستقبلية مصر.

Practice



Lessons 4 and 5

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Modern transportation helps cities become
a) dirty b) slower c) cleaner d) darker
- 2 Egypt has a strong vision for a smarter
a) past b) future c) desert d) village
- 3 The new underground electric trains help people travel
a) loudly b) slowly c) comfortably d) dangerously
- 4 The new system makes the streets quieter with cars.
a) noisy b) electric c) broken d) old
- 5 Electric buses create less
a) pollution b) water c) music d) dust
- 6 Digital signs show the next
a) fruit b) station c) color d) animal
- 7 Passengers must not block the smart
a) windows b) shoes c) doors d) seats
- 8 In cars, everyone must wear
a) hats b) gloves c) headphones d) seat belts
- 9 The underground electric trains will connect in minutes.
a) houses b) cities c) beaches d) farms
- 10 Self-driving buses will carry passengers
a) quietly b) sadly c) safely d) slowly

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

vehicles – crowded – apps – electric – tickets

Many people now use modern transportation because it is easier and faster. Passengers can buy their (1)..... with smart cards or mobile (2)....., so they do not have to wait in long lines. This helps stations stay less (3)..... during busy times. Inside the (4)....., people can sit or stand comfortably while they travel. These new systems make daily trips safer and more enjoyable for everyone.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Smart and green transportation is becoming an important part of modern cities. New vehicles such as electric buses, trains, and bicycles help people travel without harming the environment. They use clean energy and produce no smoke, which keeps the air fresh. Smart technology also makes travel easier. Passengers can pay with smart cards or mobile apps, and digital signs show important information. Roads are becoming safer with self-driving cars that slow down and avoid accidents. With fewer cars using petrol, the streets will be quieter and less crowded. Smart and green transportation will help protect our planet for future generations.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Smart and green transportation helps keep the air
a) dirty b) fresh c) heavy d) smoky
- 2 Electric buses and trains produce
a) noise b) smoke c) no smoke d) fire

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How can passengers pay for transportation?
- 4 How do self-driving cars make roads safer?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 cities – trains – many – will – Underground – connect.
.....
- 2 Self-driving – carry – buses – safely – passengers – will.
.....
- 3 will – Vehicles – renewable – use – daily – energy.
.....
- 4 buses – safely – carry – Which – the passengers – will?
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 dina is excited about green transportation
- 2 what must people do at the doors

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

“Smart and green transportation”

What is smart and green transportation? – Why is smart and green transportation important?

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 5

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

announcement	إعلان	passengers	ركاب
ticket machine	ماكينة التذاكر	elevator	مصعد
digital screen	شاشة رقمية	escalator	سلم متحرك
pay by card	يدفع بالبطاقة	smart doors	أبواب ذكية
Cairo Metro	مترو القاهرة	line	خط
next stop	المحطة القادمة	faster	أسرع
automatically	تلقائياً	station	محطة
clear	واضح	cash	نقدى

Lesson (2)

monorail	مونوريل	way	طريقة
electric bus	أتوبيس كهربائي	systems	أنظمة
single track	مسار واحد	ground	الأرض
project	مشروع	properly	بشكل صحيح
rules	قواعد	smartly	بذكاء
important	هام	bright	ساطع

Lesson (3)

eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	pollution	تلوث
self-driving	ذاتية القيادة	renewable energy	طاقة متجددة
vehicles	مركبات	fuel	وقود
less	أقل	fresh	نقى
without	بدون	petrol	بنزين
accidents	حوادث	natural sources	مصادر طبيعية

Lessons (4 and 5)

vision	رؤية	idea	فكرة
underground	تحت الأرض	electric trains	قطارات كهربائية
comfortably	براحة تامة	technology	تكنولوجيا
seat belts	أحزمة الأمان	streets	الشوارع
crowded	مزدحم	brochure	منشور تعريفى

Language in Use

First Conditional (Future Possibilities)

الحالة الشرطية الأولى (الاحتمالات المستقبلية)

Usage:

- We use the First Conditional to talk about possible situations in the future.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن المواقف الممكنة في المستقبل.

Affirmative Form:

Condition جملة الشرط

Result جواب الشرط

If

subject + **present simple** (مضارع بسيط)

subject + **will** + (**inf**) الفعل فى المصدر

e.g.

If

you **take** the monorail

you **will arrive** faster.

e.g.

If

we **use** electric buses

the environment **will be** cleaner.

Unit 5

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
passengers	مترو القاهرة
line	محطة
smart doors	تلقائياً
digital screens	إعلان
ticket machines	مصعد
escalators	نقدي

Lesson 2

properly	مسار واحد
system	أنابيب كهربائي
LED lights	الأرض
rules	ساطع
monorail	بذكاء
important	أمن

Lesson 3

pollution	صديق للبيئة
self-driving	وقود
vehicles	طاقة متجددة
natural sources	ضوضاء
petrol	أجيال

Lessons 4 and 5

seat belts	تحت الأرض
crowded	قطارات كهربائية
underground	لافتات رقمية
comfortably	فوائد
brochure	أكثر هدوءاً
mobile apps	محرر

Conjugation of verbs

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Present

grow

mean

have

hope

Past

made

Present

block

imagine

carry

Past

avoided

ran out



لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about "The Cairo Metro":

- I went to the metro with + اذكر مع من كنت.
- We bought + اكتب ما قمت بشرائه.
- There were + اذكر ما كان يوجد بالمحطة.
- I followed the rules by + اذكر ما قمت بفعله من التزام بالقواعد.
- I hope + اكتب ماذا تتمنى.

"The Cairo Metro"

Yesterday, I went to the Cairo Metro with my family. We bought tickets, waited for the train, and rode safely. At the station, there were ticket machines, elevators, and escalators. I followed the rules. I stand back from the doors and avoided blocking the smart doors. I hope to get a chance and ride with my friends, as I really enjoyed it.

How to write about "Eco-friendly vehicles":

- Eco-friendly vehicles are + اذكر أنواع المركبات.
- They use + اذكر نوع الوقود المستخدم.
- These vehicles make less + اكتب مميزات هذه المركبات.
- In the future + اكتب ما تتوقعه لمستقبل هذه المركبات.

"Eco-friendly vehicles"

Eco-friendly vehicles are cars, buses, and trains that do not harm the environment. They use electricity or renewable energy instead of petrol or diesel. These vehicles make less noise and use less fuel, which helps reduce pollution in cities. People can travel safely and comfortably using them. In the future, more eco-friendly vehicles will help protect our planet and make the air cleaner for everyone.

1 Fill in the blanks using the words from the box:

pollution – eco-friendly – renewable energy – Self-driving – safer

- 1 Cars that don't harm the environment are called
- 2 Solar and wind power are examples of
- 3 cars can move without a human driver.
- 4 Reducing helps keep the air clean.
- 5 Using clean transportation makes the world for everyone.

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb:

- 1 If we (use) the electric bus, the air (be) cleaner.
- 2 If the passenger (listen) to the announcement, he (know) the next stop.
- 3 If passengers (blocks) the smart doors, the train (not start).
- 4 If Egypt (build) more monorails, people (travel) faster.
- 5 If your dad (pay) by card, he (save) time.

3 Write each word in the correct column:

our – layer – tower – player – flower

(ow-er)	(ay-er)



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Eco-friendly vehicles help protect the environment. (.....)
- 2 Electric buses and trains use more fuel than normal vehicles. (.....)
- 3 Self-driving cars can avoid accidents. (.....)
- 4 Renewable energy comes from petrol and diesel. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 The metro has that open and close automatically.
a) lights b) smart doors c) platforms d) announcements
- 2 The monorail runs on a above the ground.
a) single track b) staircase c) smart door d) station
- 3 If passengers forget their tickets, they buy a new one.
a) will b) do c) did d) are
- 4 If the station elevators, passengers will go upstairs easily.
a) have b) was c) has d) had

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

eco-friendly – crowded – future – announcements – cards

Yesterday, I rode the new underground metro with my family. The trains were modern and the stations were less (1) than before. Passengers paid for tickets using smart (2) and mobile apps, which made everything faster. I really liked how (3) and safe the transportation was. I hope Egypt continues to build more systems for a green (4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

In the future, many countries will use renewable energy to power their transportation and homes. Renewable energy comes from natural sources like the sun, wind, and water. It never runs out and does not harm the environment like petrol or diesel. Electric buses, trains, and even self-driving cars can use renewable energy to travel safely and quietly. Using renewable energy helps reduce pollution in cities and keeps the air fresh for everyone. If more people choose renewable energy, the planet will be cleaner and safer for future generations, and life on Earth will improve.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "improve" means to
 a) increase b) reduce c) be better d) protect
- 2 Using renewable energy helps
 a) increase pollution b) reduce pollution
 c) make cars dirty d) waste electricity

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Which vehicles can use renewable energy?
- 4 How does renewable energy help the planet?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 If he (practiced) football, he will become stronger.
- 2 If we clean the room, it (looks) nice.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 trains – opening – doors – New – automatically – have.

- 2 electricity – stations – LED – save – lights – in.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 what can passengers find at the monorail stations

- 2 the station has wide escalators for passengers

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

"The Giza Metro"

passengers – rules



.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The monorail runs on a single track under the ground. (.....)
- 2 Passengers cannot use ticket machines at the stations. (.....)
- 3 The electric buses run on electricity and make no smoke. (.....)
- 4 People must block the smart doors while riding. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Passengers listen to clear at the station.
a) announcements b) posters c) doors d) signs
- 2 People can go upstairs using
a) escalators b) ticket machines c) announcements d) buses
- 3 If Ahmed hard, he will get good marks.
a) study b) studies c) studied d) will study
- 4 If you the monorail, you will arrive faster.
a) takes b) take c) took d) taking

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

Technology – passengers – safe – accidents – red

Cameras and computers are helping cars move safely on the road. Self-driving cars can stop at (1)..... lights and slow down for people on foot. These smart systems help drivers avoid (2)..... and keep everyone (3)..... People can travel without worrying about mistakes, and the streets become safer for families and children. (4)..... is making transportation more protected in the future.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

The monorail is a modern and fast way to travel in cities. It runs on a single track above the ground and connects important places quickly. Passengers can buy tickets from machines or pay by card and mobile apps. Inside the train, there are digital screens and announcements that show the next station and time. The monorail has smart doors that open and close automatically. It helps reduce traffic and makes the streets quieter. Riding the monorail is safe, comfortable, and eco-friendly, making travel easier for everyone.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "reduce" means to
 a) increase b) make smaller c) break d) move
- 2 Riding the monorail is
 a) unsafe b) slow c) comfortable d) expensive

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What type of track does the monorail run on?
- 4 How do passengers pay for their tickets?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 If we (takes) a taxi, we will arrive on time.
- 2 If the weather is cold, I will (wore) a jacket.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 use – buses – Electric – fuel – daily – less.

- 2 and – Trains – noise – buses – less – make.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 if she finishes her homework, she will watch a movie
- 2 did you see self-driving cars

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

"Smart transportation"

electric trains – less pollution



A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

planet – generations – accidents – pay – safer – renewable

Hamza : Hi Malek! I was reading about new transportation that uses (1)..... energy instead of petrol or diesel.

Malek : Really? That's great! It helps the (2)..... stay clean.

Hamza : Yes, and it also helps avoid (3)..... because the new systems are smarter and (4).....

Malek : I hope in the future, everyone uses clean energy like wind energy.

Hamza : If we do, future (5)..... will live in a cleaner and better world.

Malek : I agree. We should all start caring more about our planet.

B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- If they (ate) lunch early, they will have time to play.
- If I forget my book, the teacher (will is) angry.
- If the shop (was) open, we will buy some snacks.
- If the traffic is heavy, we (are) late.
- If my mom (will cook) dinner, we will eat together.

3 Choose the correct answer:

- Passengers must (wait in line – run fast – shout) at the station.
- Electric buses help keep the (streets – seats – bags) clean.
- You can pay for your ticket using (mobile apps – pencils – keys).
- People who cannot use the stairs can take the (cars – elevators – doors).
- New stations have bright (dark – wooden – LED) lights.
- If the lights (go – goes – going) out, we will use a flashlight.
- If the movie (are – is – will be) interesting, I will watch it again.
- If the shop has apples, I (buy – will buy – buying) some.
- If the train is crowded, we (wait – waits – will wait) for the next one.
- If we (take – took – will take) a taxi, we will reach faster.

C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

- faster – cleaner – metro – easier ()
- elevators – escalators – ticket machines – access ()
- pay – announcement – move – drive ()
- electric bus – monorail – metro – connect ()
- tickets – elevators – doors – pay ()

5 Read the following passage, then answer the following questions:

Transportation is an important part of our daily lives. People use buses, trains, cars, and bicycles to move from one place to another. Modern transportation is becoming faster and safer, helping people travel more easily. Electric buses and trains also help reduce pollution and keep the air clean. With better roads and smart systems, transportation will continue to improve and make life easier for everyone.

A Write "True" or "False":

- People use transportation to move from one place to another. ()
- All transportation is slow and unsafe. ()
- Electric buses and trains help keep the air clean. ()

B Choose the correct answer:

- Better roads and smart systems make life more (crowded – easier – messy).
- Transportation is an important part of our (daily lives – schools – homes).

D) Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE sentences:

"Eco-friendly vehicles"

electric cars – less pollution – renewable energy – reduce – generations

.....

Unit

6

Fiction Reader

Story

The Library That Time Forgot



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of the story, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية القصة سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- retell the sequence of events using target vocabulary. - يُعيد سرد تسلسل الأحداث باستخدام المفردات المستهدفة.
- discuss key story elements (characters, setting, and events) using simple language. - يُناقش عناصر القصة (الشخصيات - المكان - الأحداث) بلغة بسيطة.

Speaking:

- ask and answer simple questions about characters and events. - يسأل ويجيب عن أسئلة بسيطة حول الشخصيات والأحداث.
- discuss the moral of the story. - يناقش مغزى القصة.

Reading:

- understand and define new vocabulary words in context. - يفهم ويعرف مفردات جديدة في سياقها.
- identify the main characters, setting, and key events in a story. - يحدد الشخصيات الرئيسية، والإطار الزمني والمكاني، والأحداث الرئيسية في القصة.
- answer comprehension questions about the story. - يجيب عن أسئلة الفهم حول القصة.

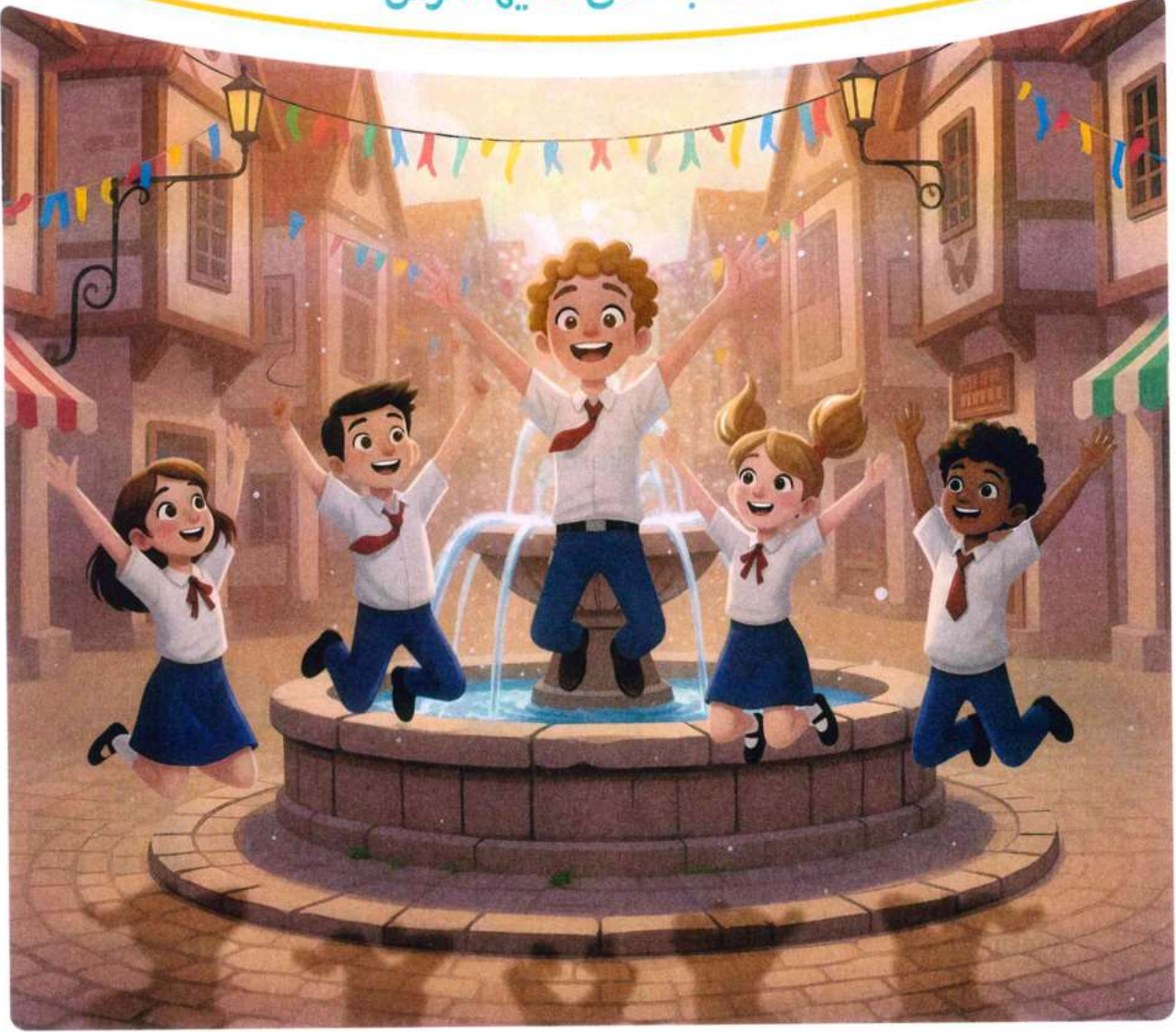
Writing:

- complete sentences using vocabulary from the story. - يُكمل الجمل باستخدام مفردات من القصة.
- write a paragraph about the story using target vocabulary words and past simple tense. - يكتب فقرة عن القصة باستخدام المفردات المستهدفة وصيغة الماضي البسيط.

The Library That Time Forgot

Title
العنوان

المكتبة التى نسيها الزمن



Warm-up

The story is about a group of children who discover an old, hidden library that no one has visited for many years. Inside, they find dusty books, strange sounds, and magical surprises. As they explore, they realize the library is full of forgotten stories waiting to be brought back to life. The children learn the importance of reading, imagination, and taking care of books so they are never forgotten again.

تدور القصة حول مجموعة من الأطفال يكتشفون مكتبة قديمة ومخفية لم يزرها أحد منذ سنوات طويلة. وجدوا بداخلها كتبًا مُغبرة وأصواتًا غريبة ومفاجآت سحرية. وأثناء استكشافهم، أدركوا أن المكتبة مليئة بالقصص المنسية التي تنتظر من يعيدها للحياة. وتعلم الأطفال أهمية القراءة والخيال والعناية بالكتب حتى لا تُنسى مرة أخرى.



A

Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



dust

غبار / تراب



library

مكتبة



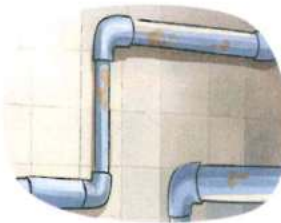
rusty

صدئ



windmill

طاحونة هوائية



pipe

أنبوب / ماسورة



plumber

سباك



treasure

كنز



fountain

نافورة



town

بلدة / مدينة صغيرة



Read and notice:

أقرأ ولاحظ:

Definitions

dust غبار	tiny particles that collect on surfaces when they are not cleaned جسيمات صغيرة تتراكم على الأسطح عندما لا يتم تنظيفها
storage مكان التخزين	a place where things are kept until they are needed مكان تُحفظ فيه الأشياء حتى يتم الاحتياج إليها
rusty صدئ	covered with reddish-brown spots from metal getting old and wet مغطى ببقع بنية محمرة من المعدن الذي أصبح قديماً ومبتلاً
clinked ططق (أصدر صوتاً رناناً)	made a short, ringing sound, like metal hitting metal. أحدث صوتاً قصيراً رناناً، مثل ضرب المعدن بالمعدن
library مكتبة	a place where books are kept for people to read or borrow مكان تُحفظ فيه الكتب ليقراها الناس أو يستعيروها
creak صرير	a long, squeaky sound made when something like a door opens or closes صوت صرير طويل يُصدر عندما يُفتح أو يُغلق شيء مثل الباب
stacks أكوام	piles or groups of things placed one on top of another أكوام أو مجموعات من الأشياء موضوعة فوق بعضها البعض
windmill طاحونة هواء	a machine with blades that turn in the wind, often used to make power or pump water آلة ذات شفرات تدور في الرياح، وغالباً ما تُستخدم لتوليد الطاقة أو ضخ المياه
volunteers متطوعون	people who offer to do work or help without being paid أشخاص يعرضون القيام بعمل أو المساعدة دون أن يتقاضوا أجراً
town بلدة/ مدينة صغيرة	a place where people live that is smaller than a city, but bigger than a village مكان يعيش فيه الناس وهو أصغر من المدينة ولكنه أكبر من القرية
clogged مسدود	blocked so that nothing can pass through مسدود بحيث لا يمكن لشيء أن يمر من خلاله
pipe ماسورة	a long, hollow tube used to carry liquids from one place to another أنبوب طويل ومجوف يُستخدم لحمل السوائل من مكان إلى آخر
fountain نافورة	a structure that sends water up into the air هيكل يرسل الماء في الهواء



Story Elements

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Title العنوان

The name of the story

The Library That Time Forgot

اسم القصة

المكتبة التي نسيها الزمن

Setting الإطار المكاني والزمني

Where and when the story takes place.

A small town known for its colorful markets and friendly people, specifically the old, dusty library in the town square.

أين ومتى تجرى أحداث القصة.

بلدة صغيرة معروفة بأسواقها الملونة وناسها الودودين، وبالتحديد المكتبة القديمة المغبرة في ساحة البلدة.

Characters الشخصيات

People in the story

الأشخاص داخل القصة



Ziad
زياد



Hana
هنا



Fady
فادي



Lara
لارا



Adam
آدم

• Adam, Lara, Ziad, Hana, Fady, their teacher, the school principal, and the townspeople.

- آدم، لارا، زياد، هنا، فادي، معلمهم، مدير المدرسة، وأهل البلدة.

الحبكة Plot

What happens in the story – the sequence of events from beginning to end.

ماذا يحدث في القصة - تسلسل الأحداث من البداية إلى النهاية.

The friends find an old key that opens a forgotten library. Inside, they discover books, maps, and letters. They use what they learn to help their town and reopen the library.

يجد الأصدقاء مفتاحاً قديماً يفتح مكتبة منسية. في الداخل، يكتشفون كتباً وخرائط ورسائل. يستخدمون ما تعلموه لمساعدة بلدتهم وإعادة فتح المكتبة.

المشكلة Problem

The library is closed and forgotten, and the town's fountain is broken.

المكتبة مغلقة ومنسية، ونافورة المدينة انكسرت.

الحل Solution

What happens to fix or solve the problem.

ماذا يحدث لإصلاح المشكلة أو حلها.

The children use knowledge from the library to fix the fountain and bring the library back to life with the townspeople's help.

يستخدم الأطفال المعرفة من المكتبة لإصلاح النافورة وإعادة الحياة للمكتبة بمساعدة أهل البلدة.

الدرس الأخلاقي Moral

The lesson or message the story teaches.

- الدرس أو الرسالة التي نتعلمها من القصة.

Working together and learning can help the community.

العمل معاً والتعلم يمكن أن يساعد المجتمع.



Story



Listen, read, and role play:

استمع، اقرأ، تبادل الأدوار:



In the heart of a small town known for its colorful markets and friendly people, there stood an old library with **locked** doors and **shuttered** windows. Dust **gathered** on its steps, and most people had forgotten it was even there. One warm afternoon, Adam, Lara, Ziad, Hana, and Fady were helping their teacher clean the school's **storage room**. As Ziad moved an old desk, a **rusty object** **clinked** onto the floor.

في قلب بلدة صغيرة معروفة بأسواقها الملونة وناسها الودودين، كانت توجد مكتبة قديمة بأبواب مغلقة ونوافذ مُغلقة. تجمّع الغبار على درجاتها، ونسى معظم الناس حتى أنها كانت موجودة. في ظهيرة دافئة، كان آدم ولارا وزياذ وهنا وفادي يساعدون معلمهم في تنظيف غرفة التخزين بالمدرسة. بينما كان زياذ يُحرك مكتباً قديماً، سقط شيء صدئ على الأرض بصوت طنين.

Keywords

locked	مغلق	shuttered	مغلق	gathered	تجمع
storage room	غرفة التخزين	rusty object	شيء صدئ	clinked	يصدر صوتاً رناناً



“Look, there’s something **shiny** in the back of the desk. It’s a key!” Lara **exclaimed**, holding it up. It was large and bronze, with a tag that read: Library. “Do you think it could open the old library in the **square**?” Hana whispered. The friends **exchanged** excited looks. After school, they hurried to the library’s heavy wooden doors. Fady **slid** the key into the lock. With a deep **creak**, the door was open. They **stepped into** a big room full of tall **shelves**. Dusty books filled every space, and the air smelled of paper and history. Sunlight streamed through **cracks** in the shutters, lighting up stacks of forgotten knowledge.

«انظروا، هناك شيء لامع فى الجزء الخلفى من المكتب. إنه مفتاح!» صرخت لارا وهى ترفعه. كان كبيراً وبرونزياً، وعليه بطاقة كتب عليها: مكتبة. «هل تعتقدون أنه يمكن أن يفتح المكتبة القديمة فى الساحة؟» همست هنا. تبادل الأصدقاء النظرات المتحمسة. بعد المدرسة، سارعوا إلى أبواب المكتبة الخشبية الثقيلة. أدخل فادى المفتاح فى القفل. بد صرير عميق، انفتح الباب. دخلوا إلى غرفة كبيرة ممتلئة بالرفوف الطويلة. كانت الكتب المغبرة تملأ كل المكان. وكانت رائحة الهواء كرائحة الورق والتاريخ. تدفقت أشعة الشمس من خلال الشقوق فى الأغطية، لتضيء أكواماً من المعرفة المنسية.

Keywords

shiny	لامع	exclaimed	صرخت	square	ميدان/ساحة
exchanged	تبادل	slid	أدخل	creak	صوت صرير
stepped into	دخل	shelves	أرفف	cracks	شقوق



“Look at these maps!” Ziad called, **unrolling** a sheet of paper showing rivers, mountains, and villages from long ago. Lara found a collection of **handwritten** letters tied with a **ribbon**. “These are from travelers,” she said, eyes wide. “They describe places I’ve never heard of.” Adam pulled a **thick** book from the shelf. Inside were **diagrams** for simple machines and science experiments. “We could actually make some of these,” he said. Over the next week, the friends met in the library every afternoon. They read about plants that could clean water, built a small windmill from one of the diagrams, and learned about **historical events** that shaped their town.

«انظروا إلى هذه الخرائط!» نادى زياد، وهو يفرد ورقة تظهر الأنهار والجبال والقرى من زمن بعيد. وجدت لارا مجموعة من الرسائل المكتوبة بخط اليد مربوطة بشريط. «هذه من مسافرين»، قالت وعيناها واسعتان. «إنهم وصفوا أماكن لم أسمع بها من قبل». سحب آدم كتاباً سميكاً من الرف. فى داخله كانت رسومات بيانية لآلات بسيطة وتجارب علمية. قال: «يمكننا فى الواقع صنع بعض هذه الأشياء»، طوال الأسبوع التالى، التقى الأصدقاء فى المكتبة كل ظهيرة. قرأوا عن نباتات يمكنها تنظيف المياه، وبنوا طاحونة هوائية صغيرة من أحد الرسوم البيانية، وتعلموا عن الأحداث التاريخية التى شكلت بلدتهم.

Keywords

unroll	يفرد	handwritten	مكتوب بخط اليد	ribbon	شريط
thick	سميك	diagrams	رسومات بيانية	historical events	أحداث تاريخية



One day, Hana **noticed** the fountain in the town square wasn't working. Using a guide from the library, they **figured out** the problem was a **clogged** pipe. With the help of a local **plumber**, they fixed it. Soon, the fountain's water **sparkled** in the sunlight, and the townspeople **cheered**. Word spread quickly about the children's discoveries. The school principal visited the library, surprised to see it alive again.

في أحد الأيام، لاحظت هنا أن النافورة في ساحة البلدة لا تعمل. باستخدام دليل من المكتبة، اكتشفوا أن المشكلة كانت أنبوباً مسدوداً. بمساعدة سباك محلي، قاموا بإصلاحها. سرعان ما لمع ماء النافورة في ضوء الشمس، وهلل أهل البلدة. انتشر الخبر بسرعة عن اكتشافات الأطفال. زار مدير المدرسة المكتبة، متفاجئاً برؤيتها حية مرة أخرى.

Keywords

noticed

لاحظ

figured out

اكتشف

clogged

مسدود

plumber

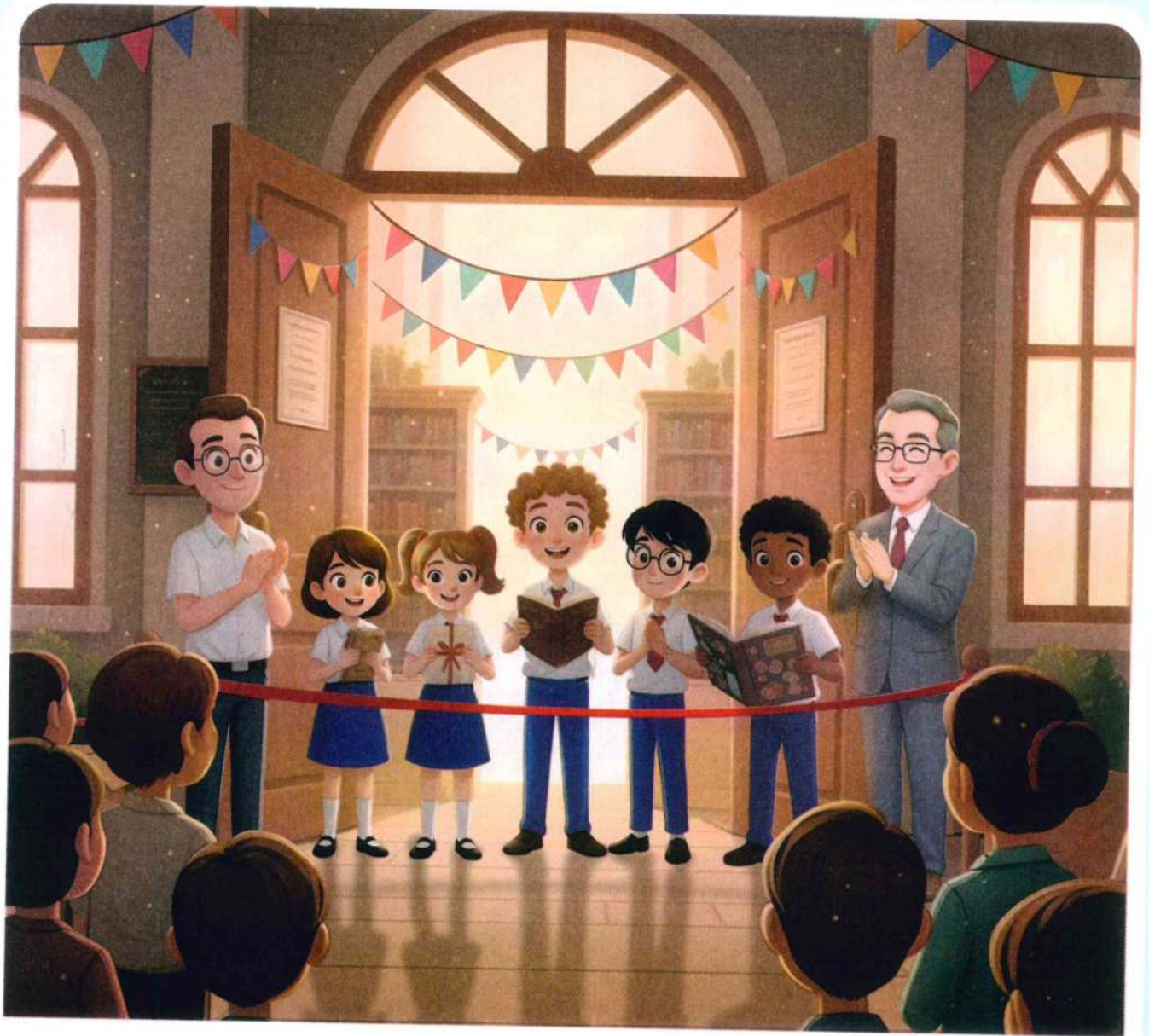
سباك

sparkled

لمع

cheered

هلل/فرح



"This place is a **treasure**," he said. "It should be open to everyone." "Let's ask the townspeople to help, we can all work together to **fix** it," Adam said. With the town's help, the library was cleaned, **repaired**, and **reopened**. The friends became its first official volunteers, helping others find books, maps, and ideas. As they stood together at the reopening **ceremony**, Fady smiled. "We thought the key only opened a door," he said, "but it actually opened our **minds**."

قال: «هذا المكان كنز»، «يجب أن يكون مفتوحاً للجميع». قال آدم: «دعونا نطلب من أهل البلدة المساعدة، يمكننا جميعاً العمل معاً لإصلاحها». بمساعدة البلدة، تم تنظيف المكتبة وإصلاحها وإعادة فتحها. أصبح الأصدقاء أول متطوعين رسميين فيها، يساعدون الآخرين في العثور على الكتب والخرائط والأفكار. بينما كانوا يقفون معاً في حفل إعادة الافتتاح، ابتسم فادي. قال: «اعتقدنا أن المفتاح فتح باباً فقط، لكنه في الواقع فتح عقولنا».

Keywords

treasure	كنز	fix	يصلح	repair	يصلح
reopen	يعيد افتتاح	ceremony	احتفال	minds	عقول



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Where did the children find the old bronze key?
 - a) playground
 - b) school storage room
 - c) inside the library
 - d) classroom
- 2 What sound did the rusty object make when it fell?
 - a) Crash
 - b) Bang
 - c) Clink
 - d) Thud
- 3 What was written on the tag attached to the key?
 - a) Storage
 - b) School
 - c) Library
 - d) Treasure Room
- 4 What did Ziad find in the library?
 - a) Treasure
 - b) Letters
 - c) Maps
 - d) Windmill parts
- 5 What did Lara find?
 - a) Science books
 - b) Old letters
 - c) Town maps
 - d) Rusty pipes
- 6 What problem did the children notice in the town square?
 - a) flooded library
 - b) closed market
 - c) broken fountain
 - d) broken windmill

2 Who said these words?

SB

- 1 "Look! There's something shiny on the back of the desk."
- 2 "These are from travelers. They describe places I've never heard of."
- 3 "We could actually make some of these."
- 4 "This place is a treasure. It should be open to everyone."
- 5 "Let's ask the town people to help; we can all work together to fix it."
- 6 "We thought the key only opened a door, but it actually opened our minds."

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

SB

- 1 The library was always open and full of people. ()
- 2 The children used a map to find treasure. ()
- 3 The children used what they learned to help the town. ()
- 4 The school principal thought the library should stay closed. ()
- 5 The story teaches that knowledge can change lives. ()

4 Answer the following questions:

1 What caused the fountain to stop working?

.....

2 Who helped the children fix the fountain?

.....

3 How did the townspeople feel after the fountain was fixed?

.....

4 What did the principal call the library?

.....

5 Who suggested asking the townspeople for help?

.....

6 What did the children become after the library reopened?

.....

7 Why did the children keep visiting the library?

.....

8 What did Fady mean by "It opened our minds"?

.....

5 Write the numbers 1–6 to show the correct order of the events:

☐ News of their discoveries spread, and the principal encouraged reopening the library for everyone.

☐ The children discovered an old bronze key labeled "Library" while cleaning the school storage room.

☐ With the townspeople's help, the library was restored and reopened, and the children became its first volunteers.

☐ Using information from the library, they solved the problem of the broken town fountain and fixed it with a plumber's help.

☐ The friends returned every afternoon, learning from the books and even building small projects like a windmill.

☐ They used the key to open the abandoned town library and explored its dusty shelves full of books, maps, and letters.

Final Revision and Tests



- Revision on Vocabulary
- Revision on Grammar
- Exercises on Each Two Units
- Story Corner
- Conjugation of Verbs
- 14 Final Tests
- 5 Al-Azhar Tests

Units 1 and 2



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 1

whisper	يهمس	strange	غريب	paintings	لوحات
canvas	قماش كتاني (للرسم)	cloth	قطعة قماش	special	خاص
art gallery	معرض فني	admire	يعجب بـ	images	صور
carve	ينحت	huge	ضخم	creativity	إبداع
bright	ساطع	giant	عملاق	alive	حيّ
inspired	استلهم	powerful	قوى	boring	ممل
displayed	معروض	frame	إطار	imagination	خيال
artist	فنان	both	كلاهما	difficult	صعب
pottery	الفخار	modern	حديث	talented	موهوب
statue	تمثال	talent	موهبة	mural	لوحة جدارية
paintbrush	فرشاة الرسم	stone	حجر	art exhibition	معرض فني
palette	لوحة الألوان	artwork	عمل فني	Sphinx	أبو الهول
masterpiece	تحفة فنية	quietly	بهدوء	Egyptian artist	فنان مصري
sculpture	تمثال أو منحوتة	absolutely	بالتأكيد / تمامًا	definitely	بالتأكيد
sketch	رسم سريع	tiny	صغير جدًا	incredible	مذهل / رائع
university	جامعة	Nahdit Masr	نهضة مصر	prefer	يفضّل

Unit 2

brilliant	ذكي / بارع	electricity	كهرباء	loom	النول
engineer	مهندس	flying carpet	سجادة طائرة	fabric	قماش
invention	اختراع	gadgets	أدوات / أجهزة صغيرة	threads	خيوط
blueprint	مخطط	assemble	يجمع / يركب	blankets	بطانيات
tools	أدوات	effective	فعال	process	عملية
improve	يحسن	solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	solar robot	روبوت شمسي
machine	آلة	wheels	عجل (إطارات)	linen	كتان
explore	يستكشف	fix	يصلح	wooden	خشبي
model	نموذج	create	يخلق / يصنع	skilled	ماهر
idea	فكرة	design	يصمم	trained	مُدرب
innovate	يبتكر	inspire	يُلهم	measure	يقيس
accurate	دقيق	worker	عامل	design	يصمم
gear	ترس	workshop	ورشة	pendulum	بندول
second	ثانية	inventors	مخترعون	Europe	أوروبا
southern Egypt	جنوبي مصر	fascinating	رائع / مُدهش	Aswan Dam	سد أسوان
generate	يولّد	flooding	فيضان	supply	يزوّد
structure	هيكل / بنية	Egypt's future	مستقبل مصر	powerful energy	طاقة قوية
concrete	خرسانة	containers	حاويات	factories	مصانع
protect	يحمي	recycled	معاد تدويره	benefit	فائدة
explanation	شرح / تفسير	poor internet	إنترنت ضعيف	materials	مواد



Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The showed many beautiful modern artworks.
a) art exhibition b) clinic c) road d) desert
- 2 The talented created a masterpiece from clay.
a) pilot b) artist c) driver d) dentist
- 3 Visitors admired the displayed on the walls.
a) artworks b) seeds c) stamps d) bags
- 4 His creativity and made him a famous Egyptian artist.
a) talent b) height c) speed d) job
- 5 The Sphinx is one of the most famous monuments in Egypt.
a) tiny b) weak c) boring d) powerful
- 6 The artist displayed both paintings, but everyone the first one.
a) dropped b) shouted c) preferred d) erased
- 7 The art teacher admired the child's
a) illness b) sleep c) creativity d) noise
- 8 He used a soft paintbrush to add details to the
a) canvas b) frame c) stamp d) desert
- 9 The bright colors made the artwork look very
a) lazy b) difficult c) quiet d) alive
- 10 The looked absolutely incredible in the museum.
a) desert b) road c) sculpture d) puzzle

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

frame – sculpture – talent – carve – paintbrush

In every art gallery, people look for something special to admire. Laila paused in front of a giant (1)..... that almost felt alive. Its strong shape made her smile. Nearby, a painting made with a soft (2)..... showed bright colors inside a wooden (3)..... Many visitors gathered around it, speaking about the artist's creativity and (4).....

B)

mural – giant – exhibition – displayed – definitely

Art can surprise people in many ways, and at the art (1)....., everyone stopped to see an incredible (2)..... on the main wall. The painting was full of colorful shapes and patterns that caught the eye. Nearby, a delicate vase was also (3)....., showing the artist's skill. Visitors (4)..... felt amazed, saying the exhibition was truly incredible.

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The engineer used to plan the new building.
a) tools b) a blueprint c) fabric d) threads
- 2 Clever built the first clock that used gears and a pendulum.
a) carpenters b) gadgets c) doctors d) inventors
- 3 To make a sweater, you need on a loom.
a) tools b) threads c) blankets d) measure
- 4 Workers in a create machines and gadgets.
a) workshop b) school c) factory d) laboratory
- 5 A small helps the clock move.
a) paint b) time c) pendulum d) gear
- 6 The Aswan in Egypt provides water and energy to millions.
a) Gear b) Water c) Dam d) Concrete
- 7 People used to make strong clothes.
a) linen b) butter c) salt d) paper
- 8 The team worked hard to the broken machine.
a) build b) create c) inspire d) fix
- 9 Engineers use to connect moving parts of a machine.
a) fabric b) threads c) gears d) wood
- 10 Workers used thick fabric to make warm
a) plates b) keys c) pens d) blankets

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) solar power – blueprint – inspires – mural – measured

Innovation can improve everyday life. An engineer followed a (1)..... to build a machine that could generate energy from (2)..... . She (3)..... each part with carefulness to ensure the design worked perfectly. The machine could fix energy problems and store it, which (4)..... others to create smarter solutions.

B) threads – accurately – gadgets – fix – skilled

Great ideas can make life better for everyone. A brilliant worker loved to explore new ideas and create useful (1)..... . In his workshop, he worked with fabric and (2)..... to make warm blankets. He was (3)..... and trained, always careful to measure each part (4)..... . His creativity inspired other workers, and together they built clever and helpful tools.



Unit 1

Conjunction Pairs

either ... or	We can use either ... or to talk about a choice between two things. نستخدم either ... or للحديث عن الاختيار بين شيئين. <i>e.g.</i> Inside a frame, there can be either a painting or a photograph.
neither ... nor	We use neither ... nor to say that two things are not true. نستخدم neither ... nor عندما نريد أن نقول كلا الشيئين غير صحيح أو لن يحدث. <i>e.g.</i> Art is neither boring nor difficult.
both ... and	We use both ... and to say that two things are true at the same time. نستخدم both ... and عندما نريد أن نقول إن شيئين صحيحان أو يحدثان في نفس الوقت. <i>e.g.</i> You can find both modern and old pieces of art.

Unit 2

Relative Pronouns

Relative pronouns are words that join two sentences together.

ضمائر الوصل هي كلمات تربط بين جملتين معًا.

who	is used for people – the person doing an action. يستخدم للأشخاص – الشخص الذي يقوم بعمل ما. <i>e.g.</i> The engineer who designed the robot is smart.
whose	is used to show possession. يتم استخدامه لإظهار الملكية. <i>e.g.</i> The student whose invention won was happy.
which	is used for things and animals. يستخدم للأشياء والحيوانات. <i>e.g.</i> The solar robot which has wheels is a cool gadget.
that	is used for things and ideas. It adds information that is important. يُستخدم للأشياء والأفكار. يُضيف معلومات مهمة. <i>e.g.</i> The gadget that I bought broke.

Practice



on Grammar Units 1 and 2

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The new museum includes both modern paintings ancient sculptures.
a) nor b) either c) or d) and
- 2 You can choose only one activity today swimming or cycling.
a) both b) either c) neither d) so
- 3 The exhibition shows either Egyptian art international pieces.
a) both b) or c) neither d) so
- 4 The student answered neither the easy questions the difficult ones correctly.
a) both b) or c) nor d) so
- 5 You can sit in one row: the front row or the middle one.
a) both b) either c) neither d) so
- 6 He is kind nor honest. We didn't like him at all.
a) both b) either c) neither d) so
- 7 She bought both a sketchbook some brushes from the shop.
a) and b) either c) neither d) and
- 8 You can choose just one the blue frame or the silver one for your picture.
a) both b) either c) neither d) and
- 9 This exercise is both easy fun. I enjoy doing it!
a) neither b) either c) and d) so
- 10 You must bring only one item to the trip a camera or a notebook.
a) both b) either c) neither d) so

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I eat (either) apples and oranges for breakfast.
- 2 She studies neither history (and) geography. She doesn't enjoy learning.
- 3 He watches both cartoons (or) documentaries.
- 4 You can take either the bus (nor) the taxi to reach school.
- 5 She likes neither soup (and) salad. She prefers sandwiches.
- 6 The bird eats (neither) seeds and fruits.
- 7 They bought (both) notebooks nor pens for school. They already have some.
- 8 I ate (either) rice nor pasta as I wasn't hungry.
- 9 She can visit either the park (and) the museum this weekend.
- 10 We invited neither Eslam (or) Esraa as they are on holiday.

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The teacher helped me with my homework is very kind.
a) who b) whose c) which d) where
- 2 The girl bag was lost asked for help.
a) who b) whose c) which d) that
- 3 The book I borrowed from the library is very interesting.
a) who b) whose c) whom d) that
- 4 The musician plays the guitar is famous.
a) who b) whose c) which d) when
- 5 The car is parked outside belongs to my father.
a) who b) whose c) which d) where
- 6 The engineer designs were used in the project is very skilled.
a) who b) whose c) which d) that
- 7 The family house is near the river invited us for dinner.
a) who b) whose c) which d) that
- 8 The student answered all the questions correctly won a prize.
a) who b) whose c) which d) when
- 9 The movie we watched last night was very exciting.
a) who b) whose c) which d) where
- 10 The cake she baked was delicious.
a) who b) whose c) which d) whom

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The musician (**whose**) plays the piano won the competition.
- 2 The dress (**who**) has a red ribbon is mine.
- 3 The man (**who**) car was stolen called the police.
- 4 The scientist (**which**) invented this tool is famous worldwide.
- 5 The idea (**who**) he suggested solved the problem.
- 6 The teacher (**whose**) explained the lesson clearly helped everyone understand.
- 7 The student (**which**) laptop was broken borrowed mine.
- 8 The bridge (**whose**) connects the two towns is under construction.
- 9 The artist (**which**) painted the picture is very talented.
- 10 The machine (**who**) we used was new.

Units 3 and 4



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 3

tour guide	مرشد	incredible	مذهل / لا يُصدق	temple	معبد
craftsman	حرفي / صانع	visiting	زيارة	monument	أثر / نصب تذكاري
design	تصميم / يُصمّم	hidden gems	جواهر خفية	border	حدود
discover	يكتشف	enchancing	ساحر	the Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك
pattern	نمط / شكل متكرر	burial	الدّفن / الطقوس الجنائزية	magical	سحري
Greek	يوناني	chamber	حجرة / غرفة	Roman	روماني
scientific	علمي	bones	عظام	gates	بوابات
whale fossils	حفريات الحيتان	proud of	فخور بـ	royal	ملكي
Wadi El-Hitan	وادي الحيتان	treasures	كنوز	excited	متحمس / سعيد
the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية	ancient village	قرية قديمة	pottery	فخار
researchers	باحثون	simplify	يبسّط	trails	مسارات
incredible details	تفاصيل مذهلة / لا تُصدق	purify	ينقّي	understand daily life	فهم الحياة اليومية
remarkable story	قصة رائعة / جديرة بالاهتمام	clarify	يوضح	temple	معبد
ocean creatures	كائنات المحيط	unusual	غير عادي	gods	آلهة
heritage	تراث	respect	يحترم	carvings	منقوشات
fossils	حفريات	traditions	تقاليد	Nubia	النوبة
ensure	يضمن / يتأكد من	water level	منسوب المياه	generations	أجيال
scenes	مناظر / مشاهد	pride	فخر / اعتزاز	symbol	رمز / علامة
archaeologist	عالم آثار	mystery	لغز / شيء غامض	restore	يرمم
mummy	مومياء	reminding	تذكير / تُذكّر	discovery	اكتشاف
priest	كاهن	appreciate	يقدر / يستحسن	mural	لوحة جدارية
emperors	أباطرة	treasures	كنوز	protect	يحمي
underground chambers	حجرات (غرف) تحت الأرض	experts	خبراء	preserved birds	الطيور المحنطة
corridors	ممرات	magnificent	رائع - فخم	unforgettable	لا يُنسى

Unit 4

infrastructure	البنية التحتية	goods	بضائع / سلع	beaches	شواطئ
determination	الإصرار، العزيمة	investment	استثمار	tourist spot	مكان سياحي
highway	طريق سريع	progress	تقدم	walkway	ممر للمشاة
innovation	الابتكار	improve	يحسن / يطور	description	وصف
extend	يوسع / يمتد / يمدد	textile	نسيج / منسوجات	shopping center	مركز تسوق
luxury hotels	فنادق فاخرة	manufacture	المنتجات المصنعة	fields	حقول
pharaohs	الفرعون	steel industry	صناعة الصلب / الحديد	the government	الحكومة
statues	تماثيل	self-reliant	يعتمد على الذات، مكتفٍ ذاتياً	the Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط
stone columns	أعمدة حجرية	industrial	صناعي	combine	يجمع بين / يضم
hieroglyphics	الكتابة الهيروغليفية	power source	مصدر طاقة	peaceful	سلمي / هادئ
grand gates	بوابات ضخمة/عظيمة	coastal cities	المدن الساحلية	remarkable symbols	رموز ملحوظة/جديرة بالذكر
ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	crowded	مزدحم	the New Administrative Capital	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
efficiently	بكفاءة	well-being	حياة أفضل	transportation	وسائل المواصلات
contribute	يساهم	developing	متطور	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
reflect	يعكس	vision	الرؤية	planning	التخطيط
ancient complex	مجمع أثري قديم	encourage	يشجع	lively city	مدينة حيوية
flyer	نشرة إعلانية	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	products	منتجات



on Vocabulary Units 3 and 4

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A helps tourists understand historical sites.
a) doctor b) tour guide c) craftsman d) worker
- 2 The carvings in the temple were truly
a) lazy b) incredible c) ugly d) bad
- 3 A skilled created beautiful pottery and statues.
a) craftsman b) tour guide c) priest d) doctor
- 4 The Great Pyramid is an impressive
a) archaeologist b) monument c) skeleton d) border
- 5 The city is full of that most tourists don't know about.
a) skeleton b) border c) develops d) hidden gems
- 6 The studied the ancient monuments carefully.
a) craftsman b) archaeologist c) doctor d) ruler
- 7 The ancient had many powerful statues built in his honor.
a) archaeologist b) craftsman c) ruler d) tour guide
- 8 The river forms the between the two countries.
a) border b) trail c) design d) pattern
- 9 The gold ring brightly in the sunlight.
a) appreciates b) carves c) develops d) shines
- 10 The statue was from stone.
a) carved b) designed c) discovered d) restored

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) carved – proud of – open – craftsmen – magnificent

Exploring old places can be very exciting for everyone. The chamber we visited showed a burial site with treasures (1)..... into stone. Visitors were filled with fascination at the (2)..... details and the skill of the (3)..... . The tour guide explained how these discoveries help us develop a deeper understanding of the past, making everyone feel (4)..... their history.

B) patterns – details – burial site – chamber – protect

Exploring ancient places can teach us a lot about history. In the Pyramid, we entered a dark (1)..... hidden under the stone floors. There, we saw a well-preserved mummy in a (2)..... and the skeleton of a small animal. The walls were carved with beautiful (3)....., and a rare fossil reminded us of creatures that lived millions of years ago. The magnificent (4)..... filled us with admiration.

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The government is investing in new roads and bridges to improve the country's
a) infrastructure b) textile c) highway d) innovation
- 2 They drove along the new to reach the city faster.
a) textile b) industry c) highway d) power source
- 3 With hard work and, she achieved her dream of becoming a doctor.
a) manufacture b) selfie c) steel industry d) determination
- 4 Solar panels are an alternative for homes and businesses.
a) power source b) infrastructure c) innovation d) highway
- 5 The company encourages to create better products for its customers.
a) innovation b) extend c) self-reliant d) determination
- 6 The school plans to its library to include more books and computers.
a) self-reliant b) extend c) manufacture d) create
- 7 The town is famous for its factories that produce beautiful fabrics.
a) highway b) steel c) textile d) food
- 8 Tourism is a major that brings income and jobs to the city.
a) industry b) textile c) steel industry d) infrastructure
- 9 This factory can thousands of shoes every day.
a) appreciate b) protect c) extend d) manufacture
- 10 The is important for building bridges, buildings, and vehicles.
a) steel industry b) textile c) highway d) coastal city

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) crowded – infrastructure – peaceful – determination – solar energy

Modern cities grow when people plan carefully. Strong (1)..... like highways, bridges, and tunnels helps transportation systems even in (2)..... areas. Skilled engineers work with (3)..... to develop industrial zones with factories producing textiles and steel. New power sources like (4)..... and wind energy are being used to create clean power for homes and factories.

B) tourist spots – extend – sandy beaches – self-reliant – farming

Cities can grow and improve when people work together. In modern coastal cities, green parks, walkways, and glass buildings make life pleasant and peaceful. Visitors enjoy golden (1)..... and explore cultural areas and (2)..... . Governments support local shops and (3)..... to help communities become (4)..... . With teamwork and vision, people develop industries and feel proud of their achievements.

Units 3 and 4



B) Revision on Grammar

Unit 3

The Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Usage:

الاستخدام:

We use the Present Perfect to talk about:

- Actions that started in the past and continue now.
- Things that happened recently with results we can see today.
- Actions that happened in the past without specifying the time.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject + **has/have** + **past participle**...

e.g. Experts **have restored** the temple.

e.g. Eslam **has** already **eaten** his lunch.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject **have / has (not)** + **past participle**...

e.g. Many tourists **have not visited** Dakka.

e.g. She **has not cleaned** her room.

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Question

السؤال

Have

I / we / you / they

Has

he / she / it

past participle (p.p.) ...?

Answer

الإجابة

Yes,

subject (الفاعل)

have / has.

No,

haven't / hasn't.

e.g. A: **Have** you **traveled** to Aswan? B: **Yes, I have.** Or **No, I haven't.**

Wh- question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word

have

I / we / you / they

كلمة الاستفهام

has

he / she / it

past participle (p.p.) ...?

e.g. A: What **have** you **bought**?

B: I **have bought** a new shirt.

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

– يأتي المضارع التام غالبًا مع بعض الكلمات مثل:

recently مؤخرًا — just حاليًا — already بالفعل — ever من قبل — never أبدًا — since منذ — for لمدة

Unit 4

Used to / Didn't use to / Did ... use to

Used to

Usage:

الاستخدام:

We use "used to" to talk about past habits or states that are no longer true.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + **used to** + (inf) المصدر ...

e.g. Students **used to write** on small boards.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Didn't use to

We use "didn't use to" talk about things that didn't happen in the past.

Subject (الفاعل) + **didn't use to** + (inf) المصدر ...

e.g. Schools **didn't use to have** computers.

Yes/ No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Did ... use to

We use "Diduse to" to ask about past habits or situations.

A: **Did** + subject (الفاعل) + **use to** + (inf) المصدر ... ؟

B: Yes, + subject (الفاعل) + **did**. OR B: No, + subject (الفاعل) + **didn't**.

e.g. A: **Did** students **use to** study online?

B: Yes, they **did**.

OR

B: No, they **didn't**.



on Grammar Units 3 and 4

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The archaeologists a new statue in the temple.
a) have found b) finds c) has found d) are finding
- 2 She her report about the ancient monument.
a) are writing b) write c) has wrote d) has written
- 3 They this museum before.
a) hasn't visited b) doesn't visit c) haven't visited d) isn't visiting
- 4 the team finished their work yet?
a) Has b) Does c) Had d) Did
- 5 The guide the history very well.
a) has explained b) explain c) have explained d) explaining
- 6 We many photos on our school trip.
a) takes b) have taken c) taking d) has taken
- 7 you ever been to Luxor?
a) Have b) Did c) Do d) Are
- 8 The workers the temple entrance recently.
a) repairs b) have repair c) have repaired d) are repairing
- 9 She this statue before.
a) haven't seen b) don't see c) hasn't seen d) isn't seeing
- 10 they added new artifacts to the museum?
a) Have b) Did c) Does d) Has

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The team (has make) a new plan to protect the ancient sites.
- 2 We (not have found) any information about the lost statue yet.
- 3 The scientists (have discover) important clues about the old temple.
- 4 (Did) you visited the new history museum before?
- 5 She (finish) her homework already.
- 6 They (has travel) to Aswan many times.
- 7 The workers (have paint) the old walls recently.
- 8 (Are) the students learned about ancient Egypt this term?
- 9 My friend (have) never seen the Pyramids.
- 10 They (complete) their project, so they can relax now.

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 People travel by cars; they used horses.
a) use to b) used to c) didn't use to d) did use
- 2 My grandmother cook on a fire, but now she uses a cooker.
a) used to b) doesn't use to c) did use to d) using to
- 3 people use to wash clothes by hand?
a) Do b) Does c) Did d) Are
- 4 Schools have smartboards in the past.
a) used to b) didn't use to c) don't use to d) did use
- 5 We watch black-and-white TV when we were young.
a) used to b) use to c) didn't use to d) does use to
- 6 children use to play outside all day?
a) Are b) Is c) Did d) Does
- 7 Students write everything with pens; they used pencils.
a) didn't use to b) don't use to c) use to d) using
- 8 you use to live in the old house?
a) Do b) Did c) Does d) Are
- 9 People depend on radios; they use smartphones now.
a) did use b) used to c) don't use to d) doesn't use to
- 10 My sister like vegetables when she was young. She still does.
a) used to b) didn't use to c) did use d) doesn't use to

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My sister (use to) have very long hair.
- 2 There (not use to) be so much traffic in the city center.
- 3 He (not used to) enjoy reading, but now he reads books all the time.
- 4 They (use to) live in an apartment before they bought their house.
- 5 We (use to) spend all our summer holidays at the beach.
- 6 I (used) play football every day when I was a child.
- 7 (do) you use to play video games when you were a child?
- 8 Where (do) your family use to go for vacation?
- 9 I (use to) like coffee, but now I do.
- 10 My grandparents (use to) travel by train.

Unit 5



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 5

announcement	إعلان / تصريح	self-driving	ذائق القيادة	safely	بأمان
passengers	ركاب	renewable energy	طاقة متجددة	comfortably	براحة
ticket machine	ماكينة التذاكر	smarter	أكثر ذكاءً	less pollution	تلوث أقل
elevator	مصعد	cleaner	أنظف	technology	التكنولوجيا
digital screen	شاشة رقمية	vehicles	مركبات / عربات	easier	أسهل
escalator	سلم متحرك	harm	يضر	travelers	مسافرون
pay by card	الدفع بالبطاقة	environment	البيئة	mobile apps	تطبيقات الهاتف المحمول
smart doors	أبواب ذكية	noise	ضوضاء	seat belts	أحزمة الأمان
clear	واضح	cameras	كاميرات	line	خط
metro	مترو الأنفاق	accidents	الحوادث	crowded	مزدحم
monorail	قطار أحادي الخط	natural sources	مصادر طبيعية	green future	مستقبل أخضر
transportation	وسائل المواصلات	run out	ينفذ	improve	يطور / يحسن
electric buses	حافلات كهربائية	petrol	بنزين	benefits	فوائد
tickets	تذاكر	planet	كوكب	teamwork	العمل الجماعي
listen	يستمع	underground	تحت الأرض	cash	نقدي
access	دخول	electric trains	قطارات كهربائية	LED lights	لمبات موفرة للطاقة
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	brochure	منشور تعريفى	properly	بشكل صحيح
pollution	تلوث	single track	مسار واحد	next stop	المحطة القادمة
stations	محطات	editor	محرر	diesel	وقود ديزل
excited	متحمس				



Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We heard a/an about the train's arrival.
a) elevator b) ticket c) announcement d) pollution
- 2 I bought my metro ticket from the
a) ticket machine b) goods c) escalator d) LED lights
- 3 We used the to reach the fifth floor.
a) screen b) elevator c) monorail d) announcement
- 4 The shows the bus timetable clearly.
a) self-driving car b) goods c) electric bus d) digital screen
- 5 You can pay by instead of using cash.
a) escalator b) LED c) card d) ticket
- 6 The open automatically when you get close.
a) LED lights b) renewable energy
c) electric buses d) smart doors
- 7 The new will make traveling across the city faster.
a) goods truck b) monorail c) pollution system d) escalator
- 8 The is quieter and cleaner than normal buses.
a) ticket machine b) electric bus c) announcement d) elevator
- 9 save more energy than old lamps.
a) Smart doors b) Monorails c) LED lights d) Goods
- 10 This project is and helps protect the environment.
a) eco-friendly b) ticket-based c) polluted d) escalator-based

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) pollution – eco-friendly – elevator – Escalators – monorail

Outside the station, an electric bus waits for passengers. It is quiet and does not cause much (1)....., helping the environment. At the top of the station, a fast (2)..... moves above the streets. (3)..... and elevators provide easy access. At night, the whole area is bright with LED lights, and the city tries to be more (4)..... using these transportation systems.

B) Smart doors – announcements – pay by card – pollution – LED lights

Cities are easier to travel in when transportation works well. Passengers use ticket machines or (1)..... to enter the station. (2)..... open automatically, and digital screens show important (3)..... . Fast electric buses carry goods and people efficiently. Bright (4)..... guide everyone, and some vehicles run on renewable energy to save electricity.

Unit 5



B) Revision on Grammar

Unit 5

First Conditional (Future Possibilities)

الحالة الشرطية الأولى (الاحتمالات المستقبلية)

Usage:

الاستخدام:

- We use the First Conditional to talk about possible situations in the future.
- Use the First Conditional when you want to say "If this happens now, then that will happen in the future."

Form:

التكوين:



Remember

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

(I/ We/ They/ You) + (inf) ... الفعل في المصدر

(He/ She/ It) + (inf + s, es, ies) ...

e.g. - I **get** up at 6 in the morning.

e.g. - She **gets** up at 6 in the morning.

- We **play** by cards every day.

- The monorail **runs** on a single track.

Negative Form: صيغة النفي:

(I/ We/ They/ You) + **don't** + (inf) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. We **don't have** eggs for breakfast.

(He/ She/ It) + **doesn't** + (inf) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. He **doesn't have** a car.



Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 If we the monorail, we will arrive faster.
a) takes b) take c) took d) taking
- 2 If passengers forget their tickets, they at the machine.
a) pay b) paid c) pays d) will pay
- 3 If the guide clearly, the tourists will understand the history.
a) explains b) explain c) explained d) explaining
- 4 If the city uses renewable energy, pollution
a) will decrease b) decreases c) decreased d) decrease
- 5 If she reads the signs carefully, she get lost.
a) will not b) does not c) will not get d) did not
- 6 If the workers the elevator, it will work again.
a) repairing b) repairs c) repaired d) repair
- 7 If he buys a ticket online, he time.
a) will save b) saves c) save d) saved
- 8 If the students study for the test, they good marks.
a) get b) will get c) got d) gets
- 9 If the museum earlier, visitors will enjoy more time inside.
a) opens b) open c) opened d) opening
- 10 If the electric bus arrives on time, we school quickly.
a) reach b) reaches c) reached d) will reach

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 If we (used) the electric bus, the air will be cleaner.
- 2 If passengers (will block) the smart doors, the train will not start.
- 3 If she (read) the instructions, she will understand the game.
- 4 If he buys the ticket online, he (save) time.
- 5 If the museum opens earlier, visitors (will enjoyed) more time inside.
- 6 If you (studied) hard, you will get high marks.
- 7 If passengers (showed) their tickets, they will enter quickly.
- 8 If he arrives on time, he (catches) the train.
- 9 If tourists listen to the guide, they (learn) many things.
- 10 If she looks at the digital screen, she (saw) the schedule.

Unit 6



Story Corner The Library That Time Forgot

Unit 6

dust	غبار	stacks	أكوام
library	مكتبة	windmill	طاحونة هوائية
storage	مخزن	town	بلدة/مدينة صغيرة
rusty	صدئ	clogged	مسدود
clinked	أحدث صوتاً معدنياً رناناً	pipe	أنبوب
creak	صرير	fountain	نافورة
unrolling	يفرد / يفتح	shiny	لامع / براق
handwritten	مكتوبة بخط اليد	tag	بطاقة / علامة
diagrams	رسوم بيانية / تخطيطات	whispered	همس
ribbon	شريط	experiments	تجارب علمية
treasure	كنز	shutters	ستائر النوافذ الخشبية
volunteers	متطوعون	cracks	الفتحات / الشقوق
plumber	سباك	principal	مدير المدرسة
repair	يصلح	knowledge	معرفة / علم
reopen	يعيد فتح	forgotten	منسية
maps	خرائط	ceremony	احتفال
minds	عقول	events	أحداث
bronze	برونز (معدن لونه بني مائل إلى الأحمر)	wooden doors	أبواب خشبية



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 What did the friends find in the school storage room?
 - a) A dusty book.
 - b) An old bronze key.
 - c) A map of the town.
 - d) A windmill.
- 2 How did the friends help the town after exploring the library?
 - a) They built a new library.
 - b) They opened a museum.
 - c) They fixed the fountain.
 - d) They cleaned the streets.
- 3 What is the moral of the story?
 - a) Keys are important tools.
 - b) Libraries are only for reading books.
 - c) History is boring.
 - d) Working together and learning can help the community.

2 Who said these words?

- 1 "Look! There's something shiny on the back of the desk."
- 2 "These are from travelers. They describe places I've never heard of."
- 3 "We could actually make some of these."
- 4 "This place is a treasure. It should be open to everyone."
- 5 "Let's ask the town people to help; we can all work together to fix it."
- 6 "We thought the key only opened a door, but it actually opened our minds."

3 Write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1 The library was always open and full of people. (.....)
- 2 The children used a map to find treasure. (.....)
- 3 The children used what they learned to help the town. (.....)
- 4 The school principal thought the library should stay closed. (.....)
- 5 The story teaches that knowledge can change lives. (.....)

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

clogged – realize – plumber – volunteers – library

Helping our community is a wonderful thing to do. The friends used a book from the (1)..... to find a solution. They realized the town fountain pipe was (2)..... . They called a (3)..... to fix the issue. Soon, (4)..... helped clean the place. The dusty storage room was empty. The town was excited when the fountain was repaired and working again!

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Adam, Lara, Ziad, Hana, and Fady were excited because they wanted to
a) clean the school's storage room b) find the library key
c) play football d) go shopping
- 2 Lara found the key and it was
a) golden b) large and bronze with a tag
c) small and silver d) wooden
- 3 When the children opened the library, they discovered
a) books, maps, and letters b) computers and toys
c) paintings and sculptures d) nothing
- 4 How did the children learn to fix the town's fountain?
a) They read a guide from the library. b) They guessed.
c) They ignored it. d) They used magic.
- 5 Where exactly did the children find the key?
a) At the fountain. b) In the school's storage room.
c) Hanging on the library door. d) In the town square.
- 6 When the children first entered the library, the air smelled of
a) flowers and fresh paint b) clean water
c) paper and history d) wood and glue
- 7 What kind of item did Lara find that was tied with a ribbon?
a) Handwritten letters from travelers. b) Maps of mountains and rivers.
c) Diagrams for simple machines. d) Empty paper sheets.
- 8 What did the children successfully build based on a diagram they found?
a) A small desk. b) A new lock for the door.
c) A small windmill. d) A new fountain.
- 9 Who helped the children fix the fountain after they figured out the problem?
a) The school principal. b) The doctor.
c) A local plumber. d) The teacher.
- 10 Who was surprised to see the library "alive again" and called it a "treasure"?
a) Adam's father. b) The townspeople.
c) The local plumber. d) The school principal.



Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة					
Present	Past	Past participle	Present	Past	Past participle
ask يسأل	asked	asked	describe يصف	described	described
allow يسمح	allowed	allowed	design يُصمم	designed	designed
assemble يجمع/يُركب	assembled	assembled	develop يُطور	developed	developed
avoid يتجنب	avoided	avoided	dry يجف/يجفف	dried	dried
block يعيق/يسد	blocked	blocked	end يُنهي	ended	ended
call ينادي/يتصل	called	called	enjoy يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	enjoyed
carve ينحت	carved	carved	ensure يضمن	ensured	ensured
carry يحمل/ينقل	carried	carried	exist يوجد/يتواجد	existed	existed
change يُغيّر	changed	changed	figure out يكتشف / يستنتج	figured out	figured out
check يفحص	checked	checked	fill يملأ	filled	filled
cheer يهلل/يهتف	cheered	cheered	fix يُصلح	fixed	fixed
clean يُنظف	cleaned	cleaned	help يساعد	helped	helped
connect يربط	connected	connected	hope يأمل	hoped	hoped
continue يستمر	continued	continued	hurry يُسرّع	hurried	hurried
measure يقيس	measured	measured	imagine يتخيل	imagined	imagined
mix يخلط	mixed	mixed	improve يُحسّن	improved	improved
move يتحرك/ينقل	moved	moved	inspire يلهم	inspired	inspired
fascinate يثير الإعجاب	fascinated	fascinated	include يضم/يشمل	included	included
start يبدأ	started	started	step يخطو	stepped	stepped
reach يصل	reached	reached	stop يوقف	stopped	stopped
receive يتسلم	received	received	stream يتدفق	streamed	streamed
reflect يعكس	reflected	reflected	surprise يُفاجئ	surprised	surprised

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Past participle	Present		Past	Past participle
remember	يتذكر	remembered	remembered	travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
restore	يُرمم/يُعيد	restored	restored	try	يُحاول	tried	tried
walk	يمشي	walked	walked	use	يستخدم	used	used
whisper	يهمس	whispered	whispered	visit	يزور	visited	visited
work	يعمل	worked	worked	wait	ينتظر	waited	waited
play	يلعب/يعزف	played	played	like	يُحب/يروق له	liked	liked
plough	يحرث	ploughed	ploughed	live	يعيش	lived	lived
polish	يُلمع	polished	polished	look	ينظر	looked	looked
practice	يمارس	practiced	practiced	seem	يبدو	seemed	seemed
protect	يحمي	protected	protected	shape	يُشكّل	shaped	shaped
pull	يسحب	pulled	pulled	sparkle	يلمع	sparkled	sparkled
need	يحتاج	needed	needed	clink	يُحدث طنينًا	clinked	clinked
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	noticed	create	يخلق/ينشئ	created	created
paint	يدهن/يرسم	painted	painted	depend	يعتمد	depended	depended

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Past participle	Present		Past	Past participle
be (is, am, are)	يكون	was/ were	been	make	يصنع/ يجعل	made	made
begin	يبدأ	began	begun	meet	يقابل	met	met
build	يبني	built	built	put	يضع	put	put
buy	يشترى	bought	bought	read	يقرأ	read	read
write	يكتب	wrote	written	run	يجري	ran	run
come	يأتي	came	come	say	يقول	said	said
do/ does	يفعل	did	done	see	يرى	saw	seen
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten	sing	يُغنى	sang	sung
feel	يشعر	felt	felt	sit	يجلس	sat	sat
find	يجد	found	found	slide	يتزحلق	slid	slid
fly	يطير	flew	flown	swim	يسبح	swam	swum
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten	take	يأخذ	took	taken
get	يحصل	got	got/ gotten	teach	يُعلم/ يُدرس	taught	taught
give	يعطي	gave	given	tell	يخبر	told	told
go	يذهب	went	gone	wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
grow	ينمو	grew	grown	wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
have/ has	يمتلك / لديه	had	had	win	يفوز	won	won
know	يعرف	knew	known	pay	يدفع	paid	paid
leave	يغادر	left	left	bring	يُحضر	brought	brought
draw	يرسم	drawn	drawn	show	يجد	showed	shown
become	يصبح	became	become	shine	تشرق	shone	shone
stand	يقف	stood	stood	keep	يحفظ	kept	kept

Final Tests

Test 1

30



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

- (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- 1 Lily visited the art gallery with her friends. (.....)
 - 2 She shouted "Wow! Look at all these paintings". (.....)
 - 3 She saw murals, sketches, and sculptures. (.....)
 - 4 She wanted to create her own artwork. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Using electric vehicles can reduce

a) goods	b) renewable energy
c) pollution	d) smart doors
- 2 Egypt's industry helps build new roads, bridges, and houses.

a) food	b) steel	c) highway	d) textile
---------	----------	------------	------------
- 3 The museum has many paintings are over 100 years old.

a) where	b) who	c) which	d) whose
----------	--------	----------	----------
- 4 If we the art gallery, we will see new beautiful murals.

a) visited	b) will visit	c) visits	d) visit
------------	---------------	-----------	----------

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

carving – mural – gallery – whisper – paintbrush

Amina visited an art gallery with her friends. She could hear people (1)..... as they liked each masterpiece. A talented sculptor was carefully (2)..... a small sculpture, while another artist used a (3)..... and palette on a large canvas to create a bright (4)..... . Amina felt inspired by the incredible artworks of the artists.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Hana visited a museum that focused on clocks, gears, and other inventions. She watched inventors carefully design pendulums and measure time accurately using different tools. The guides explained how craftsmen assembled wooden and metal tools and created innovative gadgets from blueprints. Hana saw how fabric, threads, and linen were sometimes used in making certain inventions. She learned about the importance of accurate designs and how each gear and tool worked together. Hana was fascinated by the innovation and creativity behind every invention and felt inspired to try to create something herself one day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** The underlined word “pendulums” means
 a) invention b) a swinging part of a clock
 c) a sculpture d) a book
- 2** Hana wanted to
 a) learn about inventions b) sleep c) eat d) play

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Hana see at the museum?
- 4 What made Hana feel inspired at the museum?
- 5 Who explained how craftsmen assembled tools and created gadgets?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 You can take (both) the bus or the taxi to reach school. Choose the faster one.
- 2 If we use the electric bus, the air (be) cleaner.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 the – mustn't – smart – Passengers – doors – block.
- 2 true – painting – a – is – masterpiece – This.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 what can passengers find at the monorail stations
- 2 the new art gallery will open next month

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

“Preparing a giant mural”

large wall – palette



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Amira saw a giant wooden statue. (.....)
- 2 The artist had carved the statue quickly. (.....)
- 3 Amira moved closer to observe the details. (.....)
- 4 The statue made her feel amazed and inspired. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 The loom helped people make clothes, blankets, and.....
a) shoes b) tools c) fabrics d) food
- 2 Infrastructure includes transportation and
a) movies b) books c) sculptures d) power supplies
- 3 Schools didn't have computers.
a) use to b) used to c) using to d) uses to
- 4 The artist painted this mural is very famous.
a) which b) who c) whose d) where

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

sketching – assemble – craftsman – linen – excited

Lina visited a small workshop with her friends. They watched a (1)..... use fabric and (2)..... to make colorful bags. She saw how threads were carefully arranged and how tools were used to (3)..... each piece. Lina tried (4)..... a simple design in her notebook. She felt happy and excited about how everyday items are created.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Many vehicles are becoming eco-friendly, which means they do not harm the environment. Electric buses and trains use less fuel and make less noise, helping reduce pollution. Some cars are self-driving, using cameras and computers to move safely on the road. Countries are also using renewable energy from the sun, wind, and water to power transportation. If everyone chooses eco-friendly options, the world will be cleaner, safer, and better protected for future generations.

- 2 Using eco-friendly transportation helps reduce

- 4 Where do countries get renewable energy from?



- 2 I have (visit) the new museum this week.

- ② historical – temple – has – Which – carvings?

- 2 i need a small paintbrush to add fine lines to the mural

7

"A journey on the monorail"

smart doors – LED lights



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Lara visited Luxor Temple last month. (.....)
- 2 The temple was built to honor the god Amun. (.....)
- 3 Lara and her family imagined life in ancient Egypt. (.....)
- 4 It remains one of the country's most remarkable symbols of innovation. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 He used different to fix the bike.
a) pendulums b) tools c) vehicles d) gears
- 2 He built a small boat.
a) huge b) linen c) wooden d) threads
- 3 If the weather sunny, we will go to the beach.
a) is b) will be c) was d) are
- 4 The new student is smart and hardworking; the teachers like him a lot.
a) but b) either c) neither d) both

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

accurately – clock – inventors – loom – pendulum

Long ago, people used the sun and sand to tell the time. Later, (1)..... built the first clock with gears and a (2)....., which moved slowly to keep time more (3)..... . One engineer who studied how things move, designed a (4)..... that could measure every second. His workshop was full of tools and small gears.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Last Saturday, Sarah visited a large art gallery with her friends. They walked quietly, whispering to each other as they liked the colorful paintings displayed on big canvases. Sarah noticed an artist using a palette and a paintbrush to finish a bright and detailed mural. Nearby, another sculptor was carefully carving a small wooden sculpture with incredible skill. Sarah also explored other sections of the gallery, seeing sketches, sculptures, and framed masterpieces. She felt inspired by the creativity and talent of the artists and wanted to try making her own artwork at home one day. The visit left her excited and full of ideas.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "carving" means
a) to paint b) to cut into shape c) to wash d) to draw
- 2 Sarah felt inspired by the creativity and of the artist.
a) murals b) masterpiece c) sculpture d) talent

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did Sarah see the paintings and sculptures?
- 4 How did Sarah and her friends walk inside the gallery?
- 5 What did the artist use to finish the mural?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 If passengers block the smart doors, the train (not will) start.
- 2 My brother used to (plays) football every weekend.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 the – masterpiece – Which – like – visitors – did?
.....
- 2 his – to mix – used – palette – the colors – The artist.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 where is the new sculpture located now
.....
- 2 the painter cleaned his palette on monday.
.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

"A visit to the Grand Egyptian Museum"

Why do people visit the museum?
Which famous mask can visitors see?

.....
.....
.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The mall had smart doors and ticket machines. (.....)
- 2 People could only pay with cash. (.....)
- 3 LED lights helped save energy. (.....)
- 4 Many visitors enjoyed the mall. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Clever inventors built the first clock using and a pendulum.
a) skitch b) sand c) gears d) blueprint
- 2 Egypt is becoming more by producing its own goods.
a) infrastructure b) self-reliant c) lazy d) weak
- 3 Ahmed already finished his sketch for the art competition.
a) has b) have c) had d) does
- 4 they added new artifacts to the museum?
a) Have b) Did c) Had d) Has

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

textile – hieroglyphics – symbols – statues – pharaohs

Luxor Temple is a magnificent ancient site in the city of Luxor. It was built to honor Amun and the great (1)..... of Egypt. The temple is famous for its giant (2)....., tall stone columns, and beautiful (3)..... . Visitors can walk through the grand gates and imagine life in ancient Egypt. Today, Luxor Temple remains one of the country's most important (4).....of history and culture.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

My father cares a lot about the environment, so he always chooses eco-friendly ways to travel. He drives an electric car that helps reduce pollution and keeps the air clean. Sometimes, he talks about self-driving cars, which use computers and cameras to move safely on the road. He also supports using renewable energy, like solar panels and wind power, to run our home. My father believes that if everyone chooses eco-friendly transportation and renewable energy, we can protect the planet, reduce pollution, and create a healthier, safer world for future generations.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "generations" means
a) kinds of food b) renewable energy
c) transportation
d) groups of people born at the same time
- 2 My father always chooses ways to travel.
a) eco-friendly b) slow c) noisy d) fast

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do self-driving cars use to move safely?
- 4 How can we protect the planet for future generations?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 The teacher gave (neither) homework and a project. The students have a lot of work.
- 2 She (doesn't) finished her project yet.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 automatically – The – doors – smart – open.
.....
- 2 discovered – Who – the – mummy – ancient?
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 how can a talented person improve their skills
.....
- 2 youssef loves buying the latest electronic gadgets every year
.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

"My sister is an artist"

What does your sister like to paint or draw?

How does her art make you feel?

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The monument was built by an ancient ruler. (.....)
- 2 Tourists from different countries visited the monument. (.....)
- 3 The engineers told stories about the carvings. (.....)
- 4 People in the town helped keep the monument safe. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Passengers bought tickets from the
a) announcement b) ticket machine c) elevator d) monorail
- 2 They bought bags to protect the environment.
a) friendly b) renewable energy c) eco-friendly d) LED
- 3 We can visit the museum nor the zoo today because they're both closed.
a) either b) both c) neither d) or
- 4 The driver works on the metro is very helpful.
a) who b) which c) where d) whose

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

pay by card – escalator – carefully – monorail – machine

Going to work or school is becoming easier every day. The (1)..... stations use large digital screens for every announcement. To enter, you can easily (2)..... at the ticket (3)..... . We use the (4)..... or elevator to reach the platform. This modern transport is eco-friendly and helps reduce pollution.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Last Friday, Lina visited a large art gallery with her family. She admired colorful murals, huge sculptures, and beautiful paintings displayed on the walls. An artist was carefully using a palette and paintbrush to finish a painting on a large canvas. Lina walked slowly around the gallery, watching every detail and taking mental notes of the techniques used. She felt inspired by the creativity and skill of the artists and wanted to try sketching her own masterpiece at home. The visit gave her many ideas for colors, shapes, and artistic designs she could create in the future.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "palette" means
a) a tool for carving b) a book
c) a tray for mixing colors d) a sculpture
- 2 Lina wanted to
a) watch TV b) sketch a masterpiece c) sleep d) read

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Lina admire in the gallery?
- 4 Why did Lina feel inspired?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 She (not use to) like vegetables, but now she eats them every day.
- 2 (Had) they seen the new statue?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 chamber – were – the – hidden – in – Treasures.
- 2 Egypt – make – and – stronger – Innovation – teamwork.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 hana is a very talented singer
- 2 Can visitors see the golden mask of King tutankhamun

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

"Smart and green transportation"

Why is it important to reduce pollution?
How does renewable energy help transportation?

.....

.....

.....



Listening

2

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Mona visited a textile factory last Monday. (.....)
- 2 The factory used old machines that waste energy. (.....)
- 3 Mona liked the workers' determination. (.....)
- 4 She thought the town could not grow its industry. (.....)



Reading

2

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Trucks transport different
 a) electricity b) pollution c) goods d) renewable energy
- 2 The Temple of Dakka is near Egypt's southern
 a) border b) temple c) ruler d) pattern
- 3 The students have already painting with watercolors in class.
 a) trying b) tried c) try d) tries
- 4 The artist painted the mural is very talented.
 a) who b) whose c) where d) when

2

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

palette – talented – masterpiece – fabric – mural

In the quiet corner of the art gallery, Omar watched a (1)..... sculptor carve a stone sculpture into a true (2)..... . Nearby, an artist mixed colors on her (3)..... and touched her paintbrush to a large wall creating a bright (4)..... . Omar began to sketch, amazed by the incredible beauty that felt like a magical moment of art.

7

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Tamer visited a large museum of inventions last weekend with his classmates. Inside the museum, he saw many interesting gadgets that measured time using gears, pendulums, and other accurate tools. Skilled craftsmen explained how to assemble wooden and fabric devices step by step while following a clear blueprint. They also explained how inventors tested their ideas before making a final model. Tamer felt excited and inspired because he learned how simple materials could be used to create smart inventions. He returned home thinking about building his own small gadget one day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word “blueprint” means a
a) detailed plan b) painting
c) tool d) machine
- 2 Tamer wanted to
a) sleep b) read a book c) create an invention d) eat

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Tamer see inside the museum?
- 4 What did the craftsmen explain about the inventors?
- 5 Why did Tamer feel excited?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 They bought (either) pencils and erasers for school.
- 2 The doctor (which) treated me yesterday is very kind.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 is – in – the – Where – the building – elevator?
- 2 produces – textile – The – high-quality – clothes – industry.

7 Punctuate the following:

1

- 1 what tools are necessary for a carpenter
- 2 she will create a beautiful scarf using linen threads

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"The amazing first clock"

clever inventors – gears and pendulum



Listening

2

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Lily saw a bright mural in the gallery. (.....)
- 2 The mural had boring and normal shapes. (.....)
- 3 Lily wanted to paint something like the mural one day. (.....)
- 4 It was her favorite artwork in the gallery. (.....)



Reading

2

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 With, he completed the race.
a) determination b) innovation c) industry d) extend
- 2 They took the to the top floor.
a) monorail b) elevator c) smart doors d) digital screen
- 3 We will eat outside if the weather nice.
a) will be b) is c) has d) was
- 4 My cousins are both friendly helpful; everyone loves them.
a) nor b) and c) but d) or

2

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

artists – photograph – palettes – galleries – tour guide

Every piece of art tells a story. Inside a frame, there can be a painting or a (1)..... that shows something special. Artists use paintbrushes and (2)..... to mix colors and create beautiful images. Some (3)..... prefer sculpture, carving wood or stone into strong shapes, while others enjoy painting. Inside (4)..... you can find both modern and old artworks.

7

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last weekend, my family visited the Grand Egyptian Museum. Each of us did something different. My brother enjoyed watching videos about ancient Egypt, while my sister joined a workshop to learn how the Egyptians built temples. I spent time exploring the galleries and admired the golden mask of King Tutankhamun and other treasures. Our parents read the information about statues and artifacts, learning interesting facts about Egypt's history. After visiting all the halls, we went to the museum's garden café to eat. We talked about our favorite exhibits, took many photos, and shared our excitement about what we had learned.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "artifacts" means
a) books in a library b) paintings in a gallery
c) toys for children d) ancient objects made by humans
- 2 My sister joined a to learn about temples.
a) race b) movie c) workshop d) game

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did the writer's parents enjoy at the museum?
- 4 Where did the family eat after the visit?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 The athlete (where) ran fastest received the gold medal.
- 2 If he (arrived) on time, he will catch the train.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 The – colors – mixed – painter – on – her palette.

- 2 monorail – does – the – Where – travel to?

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 how was linen produced in ancient Egypt

- 2 we found an old wooden toy inside the box

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

"The new monorail"

smart doors – LED lights

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Laila watched a bridge being built over the river. (.....)
- 2 The workers used old materials. (.....)
- 3 The bridge would make transportation easier for cars and buses. (.....)
- 4 Laila felt proud of the city's innovation. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 The students learned to the model car.
a) travel b) assemble c) stand d) sleep
- 2 Modern make our daily life easier.
a) masterpieces b) gems c) gadgets d) linen
- 3 We play in the street when we were kids.
a) use to b) don't use to c) used to d) used
- 4 You can watch either the match the cartoon.
a) nor b) and c) or d) of

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

self-reliant – farming – sources – gadget – industries

Egypt is becoming one of the strongest industrial countries in Africa and the Middle East. In the past, people depended on (1)..... and small local jobs. Today, Egypt has modern textile, food, and steel (2)..... . New power (3)..... like solar and wind energy are used. These changes create jobs, make Egypt (4)....., and help the country grow stronger.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Last weekend, Farida and Malek visited their uncle at New Alamein City. They were amazed by the wide roads, green parks, and tall glass buildings that made the city look modern and beautiful. **They** enjoyed walking along the golden sandy beaches by the blue Mediterranean Sea and admired the palm-lined walkways. Their uncle showed them the shopping centers, cultural areas, and universities that make the city lively and full of life. Farida and Malek felt excited to see how history, beauty, and modern life are brought together. They took many photos and dreamed of living in such a smart city one day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Last weekend, Farida and Malek visited their
a) school b) uncle c) friend d) teacher
- 2 The pronoun "They" refers to
a) aunt and uncle b) shopping centers
c) Farida and Malek d) green parks

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Which places did their uncle show them?
- 4 How did Farida and Malek feel?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 The family (which) house is near the river invited us for dinner.
- 2 Have you (visit) the museum this week?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 will be – able – to pay – Passengers – card – by.
.....
- 2 connects – Which – the airport – the – city – and – highway?
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 how can passengers pay for tickets
- 2 The aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt

8 Write an informal email of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

"A visit to an ancient place"

Where did you visit? – What did you see there?

New message

To:

From:

Subject:



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The archaeologists visited an ancient temple. (.....)
- 2 They wanted to discover hidden chambers. (.....)
- 3 The temple had no patterns on its walls. (.....)
- 4 They recorded everything carefully. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 A helps measure time accurately in some clocks.
a) pendulum b) gear c) loom d) blueprint
- 2 The connects the city to the airport.
a) innovation b) highway c) textile d) industry
- 3 They will travel next week if they enough money.
a) saving b) will save c) saves d) save
- 4 The craftsmen the old monument successfully this year.
a) have restored b) restore c) had restored d) did restore

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

economy – Administrative – energy – goods – progress

Egypt has started many new infrastructure projects in recent years. The New (1)..... Capital and new bridges in Cairo show the country's (2)..... and development. Modern roads help transport (3)..... quickly and connect cities. These projects improve Egypt's (4)....., daily life, and bring people closer together, showing the nation's determination to grow and prepare for the future.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Hamza and Malek visited the art gallery. Everything felt calm and quiet. People spoke in a whisper as they looked at the beautiful paintings. Hamza watched an artist working on a canvas, holding a paintbrush and mixing colors on a palette. In another room, Malek saw a man using tools to carve a piece of stone into a wonderful sculpture of a lion. Every artwork showed great skill and creativity. Their favorite one was a large masterpiece that filled the room with beauty and inspiration.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
a) learning how to draw b) visiting an art gallery
c) planting trees in a garden d) going shopping with friends
- 2 The artist mixed colors on a
a) plate b) palette c) tray d) board

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did Hamza and Malek go?
- 4 Which artwork was their favorite?
- 5 What did Malek see a man carve?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 If she (looking) at the digital screen, she will see the schedule.
- 2 We have (take) many photos on our trip.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 a mural – school – has – the wall – The – on.
.....
- 2 did – the canvas – the artist – What – paint – on?
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 seeing the Sphinx makes egyptians feel proud.
.....
- 2 is Leila an archaeologist or a tour guide
.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

“The secret burial”

secret chamber – archaeologist

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Lina visited a workshop where inventors created amazing gadgets. (.....)
- 2 All gadgets were broken and useless. (.....)
- 3 Pendulums helped measure time accurately. (.....)
- 4 Lina was bored and didn't try to draw. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Inside a frame, there can be a or a photograph.
a) story b) sculpture c) painting d) vase
- 2 The city plans to the metro line.
a) ruler b) extend c) manufacture d) design
- 3 I can find my keys nor my wallet; I think I lost them.
a) neither b) both c) or d) either
- 4 I saw a sculpture was made of wood.
a) which b) whose c) who d) where

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

flooding – benefit – power – factories – modern

The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt that helps people every day. The people who live around the dam (1)..... from its energy and water. The Aswan Dam is one of the great (2)..... buildings that changed Egypt's future. It protects the land from (3)..... and keeps the water safe for use. It also provides (4)..... for homes, schools, and factories across the country.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Mona went to an art gallery with her friends last Saturday. The gallery was full of colorful paintings, sculptures, and large murals. She enjoyed walking quietly and whispering ideas to her friends about the artworks. Mona found a corner where she could sit and sketch her favorite sculpture and mural carefully in her notebook. She added colors and details as she imagined them. Seeing her drawing take shape made her feel very proud and happy. Mona wanted to create more art at home and share her ideas with her friends.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "sketch" means to
a) draw b) carve c) imagine d) read
- 2 Mona felt
a) sad b) bored c) tired d) proud

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Mona see in the gallery?
- 4 Where did she sketch her artwork?
- 5 What did Mona want to do at home?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 She (have) finished her homework already.
- 2 (Are) you use to walk to school when you were young?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 is – site – Tuna – a famous – el-Gebel – burial.
.....
- 2 get – do – people – electricity – clean – Where?
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 researchers made many exciting discoveries
.....
- 2 why did the tour guide give us a map
.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

"A great monument"

ancient ruler – big monument

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Sara took the bus to visit the new eco-park. (.....)
- 2 She noticed smart doors at the entrance. (.....)
- 3 The park used non-renewable energy to power fountains. (.....)
- 4 Sara felt happy seeing a modern and eco-friendly city. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 You can at the machine.
a) money b) elevator c) pay by card d) smart doors
- 2 The industry in cities like Mahalla produces high-quality clothes and fabrics.
a) textile b) food c) steel d) wood
- 3 I just noticed a small pattern on the sculpture that everyone missed.
a) have b) has c) had d) do
- 4 The artist gallery we saw yesterday uses recycled materials.
a) whose b) who c) which d) where

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

safely – driver – accidents – self-driving – engineer

In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Some cars today are (1)..... . These cars use cameras and computers to move safely on the road without a (2)..... . They can stop at red lights, slow down for people on foot, and avoid (3)..... . In the future, self-driving cars may help people travel more (4)..... and easily.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Asmaa and Eman remembered the amazing art exhibition they visited last month, which celebrated the talented Egyptian artist Mahmoud Mokhtar. They admired his famous statue Nahdit Masr, showing a woman standing beside the Sphinx, and were amazed at how he carved such a huge sculpture. Eman also saw Mokhtar's first sketch for the statue but preferred his colorful paintings, especially the beautiful mural displayed in the gallery. Asmaa enjoyed exploring Mokhtar's early artwork, including the small canvas he painted as a university student, along with his old palette and tiny paintbrush. The pottery room was equally fascinating, proving Mokhtar's great artistic skill.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
a) how to make a sculpture b) Mahmoud Mokhtar's artworks
c) a story about two girls traveling to Luxor
d) the history of Cairo University
- 2 The statue of Nahdit Masr shows a woman standing beside the
a) pyramid b) Sphinx c) river d) mural

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What famous statue did Asmaa and Eman admire?
- 4 Why was the pottery room interesting to them?
- 5 When did the girls visit the exhibition?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 The book (who) I read yesterday is very interesting.
- 2 I (not use to) drink tea, but now I love it.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 special – makes – this – What – statue?
.....
- 2 made – colorful – I – a – vase – clay.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 ahmed's determination helped him win the race
.....
- 2 how far will they extend the line
.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

"The hidden chamber"

Who discovered the chamber?

What did they find inside the chamber?

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The archaeologists found a mummy inside the burial chamber. (.....)
- 2 The chamber had no designs or patterns on the walls. (.....)
- 3 The discovery helped them learn about the old civilization. (.....)
- 4 They worked carefully to protect every detail. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Archaeologists carefully studied the in the tomb.
a) rulers b) temples c) mummies d) sphinx
- 2 save energy and are bright.
a) Escalators b) Digital screens c) LED lights d) Smart doors
- 3 People have mobile phones; they wrote letters instead.
a) didn't use to b) used to c) don't use to d) use to
- 4 The children paintings were displayed won prizes.
a) that b) who c) which d) whose

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

7

pendulum – design – workshop – goods – inventions

Ali loved inventing gadgets. One day, he found an old blueprint in his grandfather's (1)..... . He decided to assemble a small wooden clock using gears and a (2)..... to measure time accurately. He also added fabric and threads to make a special (3)..... . Excited, Ali sketched his ideas and imagined creating more accurate and clever (4)..... in the future.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Egypt has many roads that help people travel from one place to another. Big highways connect Cairo with Alexandria, the Red Sea, and Upper Egypt, making travel faster and easier. New bridges and roads improve traffic and help people reach their places safely. Public transportation, such as buses, the metro, and trains, helps millions of people move around every day. The government continues to build better roads to support growing communities. These improvements make transportation in Egypt more modern, tidy, and easy for everyone.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
a) playing outdoors b) ancient roads
c) road safety rules d) roads and transportation in Egypt
- 2 Public transportation includes buses, the metro, and
a) trains b) bikes c) highways d) cars

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What helps people travel from one place to another in Egypt?
- 4 Which cities are connected by big highways in Egypt?
- 5 Why is the government building better roads?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 If passengers show their tickets, they (enter) quickly.
2 He has (write) three letters this morning.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 does – How – the – farmers – help – dam?
- 2 Dam – in Egypt – The Aswan – is – structure – a huge.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 egypt makes many clothes and fabrics
- 2 how can i use the ticket machine?

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

“Building a model”

blueprint – assemble



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Nora used a ticket machine to pay by card. (.....)
- 2 The bus stopped at stations with old doors. (.....)
- 3 LED lights used renewable energy. (.....)
- 4 The system helped reduce pollution and made traveling safe. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 She is a musician who plays the piano beautifully.
a) clay b) boring c) talented d) noisy
- 2 They visited an art to see modern paintings.
a) statue b) sketch c) gallery d) sculpture
- 3 My friends have many photos during the gallery visit.
a) took b) taken c) had taken d) take
- 4 This is the sculpture everyone admired at the exhibition.
a) who b) whose c) that d) where

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

magnificent – tour guide – appreciate – proud – corridors

It is important to study the amazing history of our country. We feel (1)..... of our ancient village and its unique traditions. The (2)..... burial site was discovered centuries ago. An old man stood quietly in the painted (3)..... with fascination. We must (4)..... the deep secrets we are discovering inside.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Farida visited the modern bus station with her father. She watched smart doors opening automatically and digital screens showing monorail and bus schedules. Ticket machines let people pay by card, and escalators helped passengers move between floors easily. She noticed electric buses running quietly, powered by renewable energy, which reduced pollution in the city. Farida felt amazed by the modern technology and eco-friendly design. She thought about how self-driving vehicles could make travel safer and faster. At the end, she decided to draw a picture of the station to show her friends how transportation is improving.

A

- 1

B

- 3



5

- 1

6

- 1

7

- 1

8

wooden gear – moving pendulum



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Every frame in the gallery tells a story. (.....)
- 2 Some artists make sculptures from wood or stone. (.....)
- 3 All artworks in the gallery are famous. (.....)
- 4 Visitors never talk about what they see. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 "....." means to make something better or more effective.
a) Improve b) Assemble c) Innovate d) Draw
- 2 He used a knife to the wooden sculpture.
a) whisper b) carve c) admire d) sketch
- 3 If she enough time, she will finish her project.
a) have b) has c) will have d) had
- 4 She didn't like vegetables because she eat them.
a) used to b) didn't use to c) uses to d) use

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

escalator – automatically – environment – electricity – LED

The metro in Cairo is now modern and easy to use. The trains have smart doors that open and close (1)....., so passengers stay safe. Inside the metro, the lights are (2)....., and they use less (3)..... . This helps the (4)..... because it keeps the air cleaner. With these new changes, the metro is faster, brighter, and better for everyone who travels in the city.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Hussein visited a new factory near his town. He saw workers making steel and textile products. The guide explained how highways and infrastructure help the factory send goods to other cities. Hussein noticed how the workers showed determination and used machines to manufacture the products. He learned that innovation and power sources make industries self-reliant. Hussein was happy to see how the factory helps the town grow. He understood that careful planning and teamwork are important for success. The visit made him excited about learning more about industry and technology in the future.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word “infrastructure” means
a) buildings and roads that support a country b) machines and tools
c) products made in a factory d) threads and fabric
- 2 The guide explained how help industries grow.
a) highways and infrastructure b) paintings and sculptures
c) books and libraries d) gardens and trees

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did Hussein visit?
- 4 What did Hussein notice about the workers?
- 5 What did the visit make Hussein excited about?



5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 The song (who) is playing now is my favorite.
- 2 If he (bought) the ticket online, he will save time.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 station – screens – the – show – Digital – next.
.....
- 2 helps – gadget – you – Which – in – life – daily?
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 can passengers pay by card on this bus
.....
- 2 where is the nearest elevator in this building
.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

7

“Creating a mural”

mural on a wall – bright colors

.....

.....

.....



Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

10

treasure – old – archaeologist – discovered – artifacts – gallery

Farida : Grandpa, I really enjoyed our visit to the museum today!

Grandfather: I'm happy to hear that, Farida. What did you like the most?

Farida : I loved the sculpture we saw near the entrance. It looked very (1).....!

Grandfather: Yes, it's a famous monument (2)..... many years ago.

Farida : And the (3)..... inside were amazing. I took lots of pictures!

Grandfather: That's great! These (4)..... teach us a lot about ancient Egypt.

Farida : I want to be an (5)..... one day!



Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

10

- 1 If they (took) a taxi, they will arrive quickly.
- 2 People didn't (used) to watch TV.
- 3 Has he (finish) his homework?
- 4 The girl (who) bag is red is waiting outside.
- 5 The trip will be on (both) Monday or Tuesday.

3 Choose the correct answer:

10

- 1 Mona Lisa is considered a true (mistake – masterpiece – puzzle).
- 2 The engineer followed a (sandwich – blueprint – fabric) to build the machine.
- 3 We need to (measure – hide – cut) the room before painting it.
- 4 The Pyramids are full of (music – toys – mystery) and unknown history.
- 5 The (steel industry – shop – garden) produces steel for construction.
- 6 You can have (neither – either – both) juice or milk with your breakfast.
- 7 The movie (that – who – whose) we watched was exciting.
- 8 We (have travel – are travel – haven't traveled) to Luxor this year.
- 9 (Are – Did – Do) people use to read more books?
- 10 If you study, you (will – are – aren't) get good grades.



Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

10

- 1 simplify – purify – clarify – teacher (.....)
- 2 return – rebuild – recycle – unhappy (.....)
- 3 young – huge – strong – artist (.....)
- 4 need – produce – drew – use (.....)
- 5 unlock – unhappy – unfair – upstairs (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

Art is a beautiful way to express feelings and ideas. In an art gallery, we can see paintings, sculptures, and pottery made by talented artists. Each artwork tells a story and shows great creativity. Some artists use a paintbrush and a palette to mix colors, while others carve stone or wood to make sculptures. Every frame, sketch, or masterpiece shows imagination and skill. Art is everywhere, and it always makes the world more colorful and inspiring.

A Write True or False:

- 1 Art helps people show their feelings and ideas. (.....)
- 2 We can see artwork only in schools. (.....)
- 3 Some artists use a paintbrush and palette to mix colors. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 4 Every frame or sketch shows (size – imagination – difficult) and skill.
- 5 Art can make the world more (colorful – bad – empty).



Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE sentences:

10

“Creating inventions”

blueprint – tools – gadgets – invent – design

.....

.....

.....

.....



Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

10

wooden – gears – invention – gadgets – blueprint – interesting

Mona : Dad, what is this (1)..... ?

Dad : It's a new type of clock.

Mona : I see small (2)..... inside.

Dad : Yes, these tools help us put them together.

Mona : And these tiny (3)..... look (4).....!

Dad : They all follow the (5)..... that the inventor sketched.



Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

10

- 1 (Has) the workers finished their work successfully?
- 2 The library is neither noisy (or) crowded today.
- 3 Egypt has (moving) the temple of Dakka to higher ground.
- 4 The teacher (where) helped me is very kind.
- 5 The museum has (neither) old and modern paintings.

3 Choose the correct answer:

10

- 1 The (singer – sculptor – driver) worked for months on the stone statue.
- 2 The patterns on the machine were very (accurate – wrong – broken).
- 3 The (library – shop – temple) was built to honor a famous king.
- 4 The (craftsman – teacher – farmer) made beautiful jewelry for the pharaoh.
- 5 Factories (eat – manufacture – hide) clothes and fabrics for export.
- 6 My friend is (neither – either – both) kind and helpful.
- 7 The cat (who – where – which) sleeps on the sofa is very cute.
- 8 We have (take – taken – taking) many photos today.
- 9 My school (isn't – didn't – hasn't) use to offer music classes.
- 10 The teacher (whose – who – which) helped me understand the lesson is very kind.



Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

10

- 1 canvas – chair – paintbrush – palette (.....)
- 2 pencil – gallery – museum – hall (.....)
- 3 sculpture – masterpiece – apple – sketch (.....)
- 4 whisper – talk – draw – sandwich (.....)
- 5 sculpture – teacher – driver – baker (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

Modern transportation in Egypt is becoming safe and smart. Electric buses, monorails, and self-driving vehicles help people travel safely. Smart doors, LED lights, and eco-friendly technologies reduce pollution. People can pay by card using ticket machines and digital screens. Elevators and escalators make buildings easier to use. Renewable energy powers many new systems, and transportation continues to improve every day.

A Write True or False:

- 1 Self-driving vehicles and electric buses are part of Egypt's transportation. (.....)
- 2 Pollution increases with eco-friendly transportation. (.....)
- 3 Ticket machines and digital screens make paying easy. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 4 Smart doors and LED lights help reduce (pollution – fun – sleep).
- 5 Renewable energy powers (new systems – toys – books).



Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE sentences:

10

“Write an email to your friend inviting him to visit Luxor Temple”

magnificent – ancient – pharaohs – hieroglyphics – statues

.....

.....

.....

.....

Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

10

steel industry – fabrics – textile industry – bridges – temples – food industry

Amina : Grandpa, our trip to the industrial city was amazing!

Grandfather : I'm glad you liked it, Amina. What did you enjoy the most?

Amina : I loved the (1)..... I saw how they use a loom to make beautiful (2).....

Grandfather : That's wonderful. Did you also see the (3).....?

Amina : Yes! They make pasta, juice, and snacks for the whole country.

Grandfather : And don't forget the (4)..... It helps build roads and (5)..... for everyone.



Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

10

- 1 Did the town use to (had) a train station?
- 2 If it (rained), we will stay at home.
- 3 (Had) they cleaned the classroom?
- 4 The monorail is (either) slow nor expensive.
- 5 The idea (who) you shared is great.

3 Choose the correct answer:

10

- 1 The colors on his (bone – palette – station) were bright and beautiful.
- 2 You need special (threads – brushes – tools) to fix the broken clock.
- 3 He checked the (time – size – measure) of the table carefully.
- 4 The (book – monument – map) is a famous stone building in Egypt.
- 5 The shopping mall has a moving (escalator – road – garden – sculpture) for easy access.
- 6 Farida felt (neither – both – either) tired nor bored during the lesson.
- 7 Tourists (have visited – have visit – has visited) the new museum.
- 8 People (used to – use to – haven't) travel by horse, but now they use cars.
- 9 If the bus (came – come – comes) early, we will reach school on time.
- 10 Did students (using to – use to – uses to) wear uniforms?



Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

10

- 1 invention – banana – gadgets – blueprint (.....)
- 2 road – assemble – create – measure (.....)
- 3 become – make – quickly – support (.....)
- 4 linen – wooden – fabric – map (.....)
- 5 teacher – design – archaeologist – doctor (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

Egypt is full of mystery and history. Archaeologists discover ancient burials and mummies in secret chambers. Tour guides explain the temples, monuments, and patterns found on walls. Kings and rulers once built these amazing structures near the border of Egypt. Skilled craftsmen helped to restore many old treasures. History teaches us about the past and inspires us to learn more.

A Write True or False:

- 1 Archaeologists discover ancient mummies and burials. (.....)
- 2 Monuments are only built in modern cities. (.....)
- 3 Tour guides help people understand Egypt's history. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 4 Chambers often contain (mummies – cars – computers) and treasures.
- 5 Craftsmen help to (restore – destroy – hide) old artifacts.



Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE sentences:

10

“A city you visited before”

New Alamein – modern – shopping centers – tourist – walkways

.....

.....

.....

.....

Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

10

monorail – special – announcement – electric – smart doors – digital screen

Maha : We went on a trip to the New Administrative Capital.

Mother: Really! What did you see there?

Maha : I saw the monorail with the big (1)..... showing the arrival times.

Mother: What was (2)..... about the monorail?

Maha : The (3)..... opened automatically when we walked in!

Mother: That's right. Did you hear an (4)..... before the train arrived?

Maha : Yes! The teacher said next time we'll ride the (5)..... bus!



Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

10

- 1 The bag (who) she carries is very expensive.
- 2 We can play either football (because) basketball after school.
- 3 He hasn't (reading) the information booklet.
- 4 If the weather (was) nice, we will go to the park.
- 5 Children (not used to) have mobile phones.

3 Choose the correct answer:

10

- 1 The school has a bright (book – mural – bridge) painted by students.
- 2 The shirt was made from soft (water – stone – fabric).
- 3 Scientists hope to (discover – hide – forget) more secrets about ancient Egypt.
- 4 They want to (break – extend – close) the train line to new cities.
- 5 I bought my ticket from the (store – ticket machine – bakery).
- 6 If passengers follow the rules, they (did – will – have) stay safe.
- 7 Did your parents use to (ride – rides – rode) bicycles to school?
- 8 My grandmother (use to – used to – use) cook on a wood stove.
- 9 Has the bus (arrives – arrived – arriving) yet?
- 10 The boy (where – which – who) won the race is my friend.



Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

10

- 1 ticket machine – elevator – escalator – sandwich (.....)
- 2 whisper – loudly – softly – quietly (.....)
- 3 monorail – replace – electric bus – LED lights (.....)
- 4 chair – eco-friendly – renewable energy – pollution (.....)
- 5 bus – car – door – train (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

Inventions make our lives easier and more interesting. Inventors often use blueprints and tools to create new gadgets. They assemble parts carefully to ensure the design is accurate. Some inventions use fabric, wooden, or linen materials. Machines like pendulums and gears show how time and movement can be measured. Every new invention shows human imagination and skill.

A Write True or False:

- 1 Inventors use blueprints to design their inventions. (.....)
- 2 All inventions are made from wood only. (.....)
- 3 Assembling gadgets carefully is important. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 4 Tools and blueprints help inventors (**create** – break – forget) their ideas.
- 5 Accurate designs show careful (**skill** – laziness – sleep).



Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE sentences:

10

“Developing infrastructure”

highway – industry – innovation – manufacture – self-reliant

.....

.....

.....

.....



Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

10

shopping centers – smart – glass – walkways – industry – tourists

Asmaa : Sarah, look at these photos! New Alamein City looks amazing.

Sarah : Yes! I love the wide roads and tall (1)..... buildings.

Asmaa : I read that the city combines history, beauty, and modern life.

Sarah : That's interesting! I also like the green parks and peaceful beaches.

Asmaa : And the palm-lined (2).....! People can walk or relax comfortably there.

Sarah : I heard there are universities,(3)..... , and cultural areas too.

Asmaa : Wow, it's not just for tourists. Many Egyptians actually live there.

Sarah : I want to visit it one day and see how (4)..... the city is!



Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

10

- 1 This bag is (either) heavy nor expensive.
- 2 I met a student (where) backpack was very colorful.
- 3 She has (finish) her project.
- 4 Students used to (walks) long distances to school.
- 5 If she drinks water, she (used to) feel better.

3 Choose the correct answer:

10

- 1 The sculptor began to (wash – carve – break) the wooden statue carefully.
- 2 He made a quick (sketch – score – report) of the old building.
- 3 Modern (shoes – gadgets – books) like smartphones help us every day.
- 4 The (archaeologist – teacher – driver) studied the ancient tomb carefully.
- 5 With great (determination – anger – sleep), the workers completed the project on time.
- 6 If we (leaves – leaving – leave) now, we will catch the train.
- 7 (Have – Did – Do) you use to live in Cairo?
- 8 Many people haven't (see – saw – seen) the new statue yet.
- 9 The doctor (which – who – whose) works here is from Aswan.
- 10 The restaurant is (neither – both – either) clean and comfortable.



Reading Comprehension

4 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

10

- 1 paint – carve – sculptor – draw (.....)
- 2 What – When – are – Where (.....)
- 3 run – frame – canvas – palette (.....)
- 4 accurate – time – clever – famous (.....)
- 5 layer – tower – player – fur (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

Art is a wonderful way to show creativity and feelings. In an art gallery, we can see paintings, sculptures, and murals made by talented artists. Some artists use a paintbrush and palette to mix colors, while others carve wood or stone to make amazing artwork. Every sketch or masterpiece shows imagination and skill. Art makes the world more incredible and inspiring.

A Write True or False:

- 1 Art helps people express feelings and creativity. (.....)
- 2 Only museums can show art. (.....)
- 3 Some artists use a paintbrush and palette to mix colors. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 4 Every sketch or masterpiece shows (imagination – weight – size) and skill.
- 5 Art can make the world more (incredible – boring – empty).



Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE sentences:

10

“Modern transport”

electric bus – ticket machine – digital screen – eco-friendly – self-driving

.....

.....

.....

.....

Tapescripts

يحتوي هذا الجزء على نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

UNIT 1

Practice on Lesson 1

Lily is a young artist who loves to draw. One Saturday, her family took her to a big art gallery. She saw huge paintings, colorful pottery, and a wooden statue. Lily admired a strange sculpture and a bright mural. Her favorite was a very old masterpiece. She felt inspired to create art.

Test Yourself 1

I made a beautiful clay vase in my art class. It has a wide, round base and a narrow top. I used red, blue, and yellow clay to make it bright. After shaping it by hand, I polished it when it dried, so it became smooth and shiny. I added small patterns with a toothpick. I'm very proud of my work.

Test Yourself 2

Art is a beautiful way to express feelings. Inside a frame, there can be a painting or a photograph. Artists use brushes and colors to create amazing images. Some artists carve stone or wood into sculptures. In a gallery, people whisper as they admire the artwork. Art is full of imagination and creativity.

UNIT 2

Practice on Lesson 1

The young engineer explained his solar robot gadget with excitement. He said he first designed a clear blueprint, then assembled the small parts using simple tools. When the robot is placed in the sun, its wheels move because it runs on solar power. If something doesn't work, it is easy to fix and improve. His invention helps people explore new ideas in a fun way.

Test Yourself 1

The Aswan Dam is a large and important structure in southern Egypt. It helps people every day by controlling the Nile River and stopping dangerous flooding. The dam was built to produce strong energy for homes, factories, and many other places. It is made of stone and concrete, and it also stores water that farmers use to grow their crops all year. The dam protects nearby villages and supports life in Egypt.

Test Yourself 2

Engineers often invent new things to help people in their daily lives. In their workshops, they use different tools to build and fix machines. Sometimes, they assemble small parts to make a useful gadget that can do an important job. Each time they work, they try to improve their ideas and make their inventions better. They also test their inventions carefully to make sure they work efficiently. They keep detailed notes to improve their designs in the future.

UNIT 3

Practice on Lesson 1

Tuna el-Gebel is a famous place in Egypt. Archaeologists made an amazing discovery there, a mummy inside a burial chamber. The tomb is full of beautiful drawings and old objects. It is a mystery how the ancient Egyptians built it so long ago. Tuna el-Gebel shows Egypt's great heritage.

Test Yourself 1

Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt where skilled craftsmen and artists lived with their families. They built and decorated the royal tombs in the Valley of the Kings. Archaeologists found drawings and notes on pottery, showing how the workers recorded their work. The walls of their houses had beautiful patterns. Deir el-Medina helps us understand the daily life of the people in ancient Egypt.

Test Yourself 2

The Temple of Dakka is an ancient monument in Nubia, near Egypt's southern border. Many rulers have designed temples for gods like Thoth, the god of wisdom. Later, Greek and Roman emperors added new walls and carvings. When the High Dam raised the water level, Egyptian experts carefully have moved the temple to higher ground.

UNIT 4

Practice on Lesson 1

Egypt is improving its infrastructure by building new highways, bridges, and tunnels. In the past, roads were narrow and traveling took a long time. Today, modern transportation systems help people move faster and transport goods more easily. These new projects show the country's determination to develop and make life better for its people. Engineers are working hard. The government wants to help people in the future.

Test Yourself 1

In the past, people in Egypt depended on farming and small local jobs. There were few factories and machines. Today, Egypt has many factories that make clothes, food, and steel. Engineers and workers help build new roads and cities. These changes make life easier and the country stronger. Many young people now learn new skills to work in modern jobs. Technology helps factories work faster and better. Egypt continues to grow and look forward to a bright future.

Test Yourself 2

Egypt is building new infrastructure with roads, bridges, and factories. Engineers help the country grow. The textile industry manufactures fabrics and clothes. People use solar energy for clean power. These projects show Egypt's progress and innovation. The country is becoming

more modern and self-reliant. As the country builds new factories, more Egyptians find work and contribute to a growing economy. The factories that once didn't exist now light up the future for millions.

UNIT 5

Practice on Lesson 1

Good morning! Welcome to the Cairo Metro, Line 3, the Green Line. The new trains are faster and cleaner, with smart doors that open and close automatically. Inside, digital screens show the next station and the time, and passengers can hear clear announcements. At Giza Station, there are ticket machines, elevators, and escalators. The metro uses LED lights and smart electricity, saving energy and helping the environment.

Test Yourself 1

In the future, people will travel in cleaner and smarter ways. Many new vehicles are eco-friendly and do not harm the environment. Electric buses and trains use less fuel and make less noise, which reduces pollution. Some cars are self-driving, stopping at red lights and avoiding accidents. Many countries use renewable energy from the sun, wind, and water. If everyone chooses green transportation, the world will be safer and cleaner for future generations.

Test Yourself 2

Egypt is changing how people travel with new transportation systems in Cairo and Giza. The monorail runs on a single track above the ground and connects important places quickly. Passengers can use ticket machines, digital screens, and hear announcements. Some stations have elevators and escalators. The electric buses run on electricity and make no smoke. People must follow the rules, stand or sit properly, and can pay by card or phone. These changes make travel safer and cleaner.

Final Tests

Test 1

Lily was very excited because her family took her to a big art gallery on Saturday. When she entered, she whispered, "Wow! Look at all these paintings!" The walls were full of colorful murals, bright sketches, and beautiful sculptures. Lily walked slowly from one artwork to another, trying to notice every small detail. She felt inspired and wished she could create her own artwork one day.

Test 2

In one of the gallery rooms, Amira saw a giant wooden statue that immediately caught her attention. The artist had carved it very carefully, giving it a strong and powerful shape. Amira moved closer to observe the smooth lines and beautiful details. She imagined how long the artist must have worked on it. The size and beauty of the statue made her feel amazed and inspired.

Test 3

Ahmed watched the building of a new highway near his town. He admired the engineers' determination to finish it on time. The workers used strong steel and modern machines to manufacture parts of the road. The project helped extend the infrastructure and connect different cities. Ahmed thought about how innovation in the steel industry and power sources could make Egypt more self-reliant in the future.

Test 4

The new mall was full of modern technology. At the entrance, there were smart doors that opened automatically. Inside, people used ticket machines and digital screens to get information or pay by card. The mall used LED lights to save energy, making it eco-friendly. Many visitors liked how comfortable and easy everything was. It became a popular place for families to shop and enjoy their time.

Test 5

The town had a famous monument built by an ancient ruler. Every year, tourists from different countries visited it to learn about its history. Tour guides explained the stories carved on the walls and the meaning behind the beautiful designs. The monument stood near the old temple, and people in the town worked hard to keep it safe. Everyone felt proud that such an important part of their history still existed.

Test 6

Mona visited a textile factory with her teacher last Monday. She saw machines that help manufacture cloth and organize threads into beautiful patterns. The factory used new power sources to save energy and reduce pollution. Mona admired the determination of the workers and how innovation made the production faster and better. She realized that the town's industry could grow and people could become more self-reliant.

Test 7

Lily saw a bright mural painted on one of the gallery walls. The colors were bold and exciting, and the shapes were creative and unusual. She whispered, "I want to paint something like this one day!" The mural filled her with inspiration and made her think about the kind of art she wanted to create. It became her favorite artwork in the entire gallery.

Test 8

Leila watched a new bridge being built over the river. The project wanted to extend the city's infrastructure and connect places. Workers showed great determination and used advanced materials. The bridge would make transportation easier for cars and buses. Leila felt proud to see how innovation improves everyday life in her city.

Test 9

A group of archaeologists visited an ancient temple to study its history. They wanted to discover hidden chambers and learn about the rulers who built it. Inside the temple, they found monuments, carvings, and mysterious patterns

on the walls. Each detail told a story about ancient life. The archaeologists recorded everything carefully so they could continue their research later.

Test 10

Lina visited a workshop where inventors created amazing gadgets. She watched as they followed blueprints and used tools to assemble wooden and fabric parts. Some devices had gears that moved precisely, and pendulums that helped measure time accurately. Lina tried sketching her own design for a small invention. She enjoyed learning how careful planning and creativity can make ideas come to life.

Test 11

Sara took the monorail to visit the new eco-park. She noticed smart doors at the entrance and digital screens showing park maps. People paid for tickets by card and walked past LED lights that brightened the pathways. The electric buses moved quietly, reducing pollution, and the park used renewable energy to power fountains and lights. Sara felt happy seeing a modern and environmentally friendly city.

Test 12

Inside the burial chamber, the archaeologists found a well-preserved mummy. They were excited because the chamber had beautiful designs and ancient patterns carved on the walls. The mummy helped them learn more about the old civilization and how people lived long ago. They worked carefully to protect every detail so nothing would be damaged. It was one of their most important discoveries.

Test 13

Nora rode the self-driving electric bus to school. She watched digital screens showing the route and used a ticket machine to pay by card. The bus stopped at stations with smart doors, and the street lights were bright LED lights powered by renewable energy. The system helped reduce pollution and made traveling safe. Nora thought it was amazing how technology improved the city's transportation.

Test 14

Every frame in a gallery tells a story. Some hold paintings, others photographs. Artists mix colors on a palette to create beautiful images. Some make sculptures from wood or stone. Not every artwork is famous, but some become masterpieces. Visitors often whisper while looking at the art. Art is full of color, feeling, and imagination.

Writing Answers

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (برجراف) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

UNIT 1

Practice on Lesson 2

"Creative artists"

(masterpiece – talent)

Every frame tells a story. Inside a frame, there can be a painting or a photograph. Artists use a paintbrush and palette to mix colors. Some artists carve wood or stone to make sculptures. Every artwork shows talent and creativity. Not every piece is famous, but some are masterpieces. Art is everywhere, full of color and imagination.

Practice on Lesson 3

"My sister is an artist"

(What does your sister like to paint or draw? – How does her art make you feel?)

My sister likes to paint flowers and animals. She uses bright colors and paints carefully. Her art makes me feel happy and amazed. I enjoy watching her create new artworks. I am proud of her talent because every painting is full of beauty and creativity.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

(treasures – tourists)

Last weekend, I visited The Grand Egyptian Museum. The museum has many beautiful halls full of ancient treasures. Visitors can see golden jewelry, statues, and paintings from Egypt's long history. Many tourists come from all over the world to admire the exhibits. The museum is a wonderful place to learn about Egypt and enjoy its amazing treasures.

Test Yourself 1

"My favorite artist"

(Mahmoud Mokhtar – talented)

My favorite artist is Mahmoud Mokhtar. He was an Egyptian artist who could carve amazing statues from stone. I like his artworks because they are full of life and beauty. I feel inspired when I see them. He used his talent and imagination to create art that people still admire today. I hope to be as creative as him.

Test Yourself 2

"A day at the museum"

(treasures – history)

I had a nice trip with my school last week. We visited the museum to see ancient treasures and statues. We learned about the history of Egypt. The museum has many beautiful halls and galleries. Visitors can see the golden mask of King Tutankhamun and other famous artifacts. Students watch videos and join workshops. After the visit, we enjoyed food in the garden café and talked about what we saw.

Al-Azhar Corner

"Visiting an art gallery"

(paintings – artwork – talented – artists – exhibition)

Last weekend, I visited an art gallery. I saw many beautiful paintings and interesting artwork. The artists were very talented and creative. There was a new exhibition with colorful and amazing pieces. I enjoyed looking at all the art and learning about the artists' ideas.

UNIT 2

Practice on Lesson 1

"My helpful gadget"

(What is your helpful gadget? – What does the gadget do?)

My helpful gadget is my smartphone. It helps me stay connected with my family and friends. I use it to set reminders, check the weather, and search for information. It also lets me listen to music and take clear photos. This small device makes my daily tasks easier and helps me stay organized wherever I go.

Practice on Lesson 3

"The amazing first clock"

(clever inventors – gears and pendulum)

A clever inventor built the first clock that used gears and a pendulum. The pendulum, which moved slowly from side to side, helped the clock keep time more accurately. One engineer, who studied how things move, designed a clock that could measure every second. The workshop where he worked was full of tools and small gears. The clock, whose design was new and exciting.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

"The Aswan Dam"

(Why was the dam built? — How does the dam help Egypt?)

The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt that helps people every day. It was built by engineers who wanted to stop the Nile from flooding and to generate powerful energy for homes and factories. The dam keeps water that farmers use to grow crops all year. It helps protect villages that are near the river and gives Egypt a clean supply of electricity.

Test Yourself 1

"How ancient Egyptians made cloth"

(used threads to – used the loom)

Ancient Egyptian workers used fine threads to make cloth, and they used the loom to turn simple fibers into strong fabric. The workers carefully spun the threads, arranged them on the loom, and wove them with great skill. Their method showed how people used basic tools to create beautiful, useful cloth that lasted for many years in their daily life.

Test Yourself 2

"My amazing invention"

(simple tools – useful)

My helpful gadget is a simple tool I use every day. I used simple tools to make it, and this invention is useful because it helps me finish my tasks faster. It is easy to carry and works well at home or school. I always keep it with me because it saves time and makes my work easier.

Al-Azhar Corner

"The Egyptian loom"

(ancient – threads – linen – fabric – inspire)

Thousands of years ago, the ancient Egyptians created an amazing invention called the loom. The loom made strong fabric for making clothes from linen. Before building a loom, an engineer or skilled worker, who was trained in crafting tools, would draw a blueprint to show the size, shape, and parts needed. This ancient invention still inspires modern machines that make our clothes.

UNIT 3

Practice on Lesson 1

“Your visit to Tuna el-Gebel”

(chamber – mummy)

Last week, I visited Tuna el-Gebel with my class. We went inside an ancient burial chamber and learned about the history of the place. We saw a real mummy and many animal mummies, especially birds. The carvings on the walls were beautiful and old. I felt proud to see this amazing part of Egypt's history.

Practice on Lesson 2

“The Temple of Dakka”

(monument – carvings)

Last month, I visited the Temple of Dakka, a beautiful ancient monument in Nubia. The walls were covered with amazing carvings that showed old stories and gods. The guide told us how experts work hard to restore the temple and protect it from damage. I enjoyed the visit and felt proud of Egypt's great history.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

“Wadi El-Hitan”

(magical – fossils)

Wadi El-Hitan is a magical place in the Western Desert. Millions of years ago, this area was covered by a huge ocean. Today, people can see fossils of ancient whales on the ground. Some whale skeletons are very long and show amazing details. These fossils help us understand history and make every visitor feel proud of Egypt's wonderful natural treasures.

Test Yourself 1

“A place you want to visit in Egypt”

(monument – heritage)

I want to visit a famous monument in Egypt one day. It is an important part of our history and shows our great heritage. I would love to see its beautiful carvings and learn more about the people who built it. Visiting this place will make me feel proud of my country.

Test Yourself 2

“How Egypt restored the temple of Dakka”

(border – High Dam)

The Temple of Dakka is an ancient monument near Egypt's southern border. When the High Dam raised the water level, experts worked hard to restore the temple. They moved its stones to a safe place on higher ground. Today, people visit Dakka to see its carvings and learn how Egypt protected this important part of its history.

Al-Azhar Corner

“A day at a museum”

(family – long time – bones – fun – new things)

Last Sunday, I went to a museum with my family. I saw old things from Egypt a long time ago. There were stones, bones, and old pictures. I liked the big statues the most. I had a fun day and I learned many new things.

UNIT 4

Practice on Lesson 2

“Egypt’s industrial growth”

(What do textile factories produce? – What products does the food industry make?)

Egypt’s industrial growth is clear in its expanding factories and modern production methods. Textile factories produce clothes and fabrics. The food industry now manufactures many Egyptian products such as pasta, juice, and snacks for people across the country. These products meet people’s needs every day. As the country builds new factories, more Egyptians find work and contribute to a growing economy.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

“New Alamein City”

(sandy beaches – luxury hotels)

New Alamein City is one of Egypt’s most modern coastal cities. It lies on the beautiful northern coast, where the blue waters of the Mediterranean Sea meet golden sandy beaches. The city is designed to be a smart place that combines history, beauty, and modern life. Wide roads, green parks, and tall glass buildings make it look like a city of the future. Visitors can enjoy peaceful beaches, luxury hotels, and beautiful walkways filled with palm trees.

Test Yourself 1

“A day at an old temple”

(Which temple did you visit? – What did you learn or imagine there?)

I visited Luxor Temple, a magnificent ancient complex in the city of Luxor. It was built to honor the god Amun and the great pharaohs of Egypt. The temple is known for its giant statues, tall stone columns, and beautiful hieroglyphics. I walked through its grand gates. I imagined life in ancient Egypt. It remains one of the country’s most remarkable symbols of history and culture.

Test Yourself 2

“My favorite city by the sea”

(beautiful beaches - modern places)

New Alamein City is my favorite city by the sea. The city is designed to be a smart place that combines history, beauty, and modern life. Wide roads, green parks, and tall glass buildings make it look like a city of the future. Visitors can enjoy beautiful beaches. New Alamein City is one of Egypt’s most modern places. New Alamein reflects Egypt’s vision for progress.

Al-Azhar Corner

“My trip to Luxor”

(family – travel – temple – statues – hieroglyphics)

I traveled to Luxor with my family last summer. We visited a famous temple filled with huge statues, and I was excited to see the ancient hieroglyphics on the walls. My family took many photos to remember the trip. It was a wonderful travel experience that taught me a lot about Egypt’s rich history and culture.

UNIT 5

Practice on Lesson 2

“The electric bus”

(transportation - electricity)

In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Many new means of transportation are becoming eco-friendly, which means they do not harm the environment. The electric bus uses less fuel and makes less noise. It runs on electricity. This helps reduce pollution in cities and keeps the air fresh. If everyone chooses eco-friendly transportation, the world will become a cleaner and safer place.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

"Smart and green transportation"

(What is smart and green transportation? – Why is smart and green transportation important)

In the future, I imagine Egypt will have faster, cleaner, and smarter ways to travel. There will be underground electric trains that connect cities in just minutes and self-driving buses that carry passengers safely and comfortably. These vehicles will use renewable energy, so the air will be cleaner and the streets quieter, with much less pollution. I'm really excited about this smart and green future.

Test Yourself 1

"The Giza Metro"

(passengers – rules)

The line three is called the green line. The Giza Metro is now faster and cleaner than before. New trains have smart doors that open and close automatically. Inside the train, there are big digital screens. They show the next station and the time. You can also hear clear announcements in Arabic and English. The passengers should follow rules.

Test Yourself 2

"Smart transportation"

(electric trains – less pollution)

In the future, I think Egypt will have faster, cleaner, and smarter ways to travel. There will be underground electric trains that connect cities in just minutes and self-driving buses that carry passengers safely and comfortably. These vehicles will use renewable energy, so the air will be cleaner and the streets quieter, with less pollution. The environment will be better for everyone.

Al-Azhar Corner

"Eco-friendly vehicles"

(electric cars – less pollution – renewable energy – reduce – generations)

In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Electric cars are becoming eco-friendly, which means they do not harm the environment. The electric buses and trains use renewable energy and make less noise. This helps reduce pollution in cities and keeps the air fresh for the new generation.

Dictation Copybook

كراسة تسميع الكلمات





Lesson 1

.....	يهمس	.....	فرشاة الرسم
.....	معرض فنون	.....	لوحة الألوان
.....	ينحت / يحفر	.....	تحفة فنية
.....	قماش الرسم / لوح الرسم	.....	منحوتة / تمثال فني
.....	فنان	.....	غريب
.....	الفخار	.....	عملاق
.....	تمثال	.....	قوى

Lesson 2

.....	إطار	.....	صورة فوتوغرافية
.....	حديث	.....	إبداع
.....	موهبة	.....	حيّ / على قيد الحياة
.....	حجر	.....	ممل
.....	عمل فني	.....	خيال
.....	صعب	.....	أشكال

Lesson 3

.....	موهوب	.....	لا يصدق / مذهل
.....	لوحة جدارية	.....	رسمة / تخطيط
.....	معرض فني	.....	يتخيل
.....	مصري	.....	جامعة

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	عريض	.....	طين
.....	ناعم	.....	مزهرية (فازة)
.....	نقوش / رسومات	.....	ظل / لون مختلف
.....	المتحف المصري الكبير	.....	لامع
.....	كنوز	.....	عود أسنان
.....	قاعات	.....	قديم
.....	الملك توت عنخ آمون	.....	تاريخ
.....	سُيَّاح	.....	تصميم
.....	معبد	.....	ذهبي



Unit 2

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	مهندس	.....	روبوت شمسي
.....	اختراع	.....	أجهزة صغيرة
.....	مخطط	.....	يجمع
.....	أدوات	.....	الطاقة الشمسية
.....	نموذج	.....	يصمم
.....	أفكار	.....	تفصيلي

Lesson 2

.....	النول	.....	كتان
.....	قماش	.....	خشب
.....	خيوط	.....	يلهم
.....	بطانيات	.....	عامل ماهر
.....	عملية	.....	أدوات الحرف اليدوية

Lesson 3

.....	يقيس	.....	وقت
.....	بندول	.....	دقيق
.....	مخترعون	.....	ترس
.....	ورشة صيانة	.....	ثانية
.....	مشهور	.....	ساعة حائط

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	سد أسوان	.....	جنوب مصر
.....	حضارة	.....	فيضان
.....	طاقة	.....	إمداد
.....	قرى	.....	خرسانة
.....	كهرياء	.....	يفيد

Unit 3

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	الدفن / الطقوس الجنائزية	.....	مومياء
.....	لا يُنسى	.....	اكتشاف
.....	مقبرة	.....	حجرة / غرفة
.....	عالم آثار	.....	لغز / شيء غامض

Lesson 2

.....	معبد	.....	يُرمم / يعيد
.....	حاكم	.....	أثر
.....	تقاليد	.....	أباطرة
.....	حدود	.....	رمز

Lesson 3

.....	مرشد سياحي	.....	نمط / نقش
.....	حرفي	.....	ملكي
.....	الحياة اليومية	.....	يلاحظ
.....	عمال	.....	وادي الملوك

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	مميز	.....	مسارات
.....	علمي	.....	عظام
.....	تاريخي	.....	محيط
.....	حيثان	.....	مخلوقات
.....	حفريات	.....	هياكل عظمية



Unit 4

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	البنية التحتية	.....	الابتكار
.....	وسائل المواصلات	.....	يوسّع
.....	إمدادات الطاقة	.....	البضائع
.....	الطرق السريعة	.....	أنظمة
.....	الأنفاق	.....	التقدم
.....	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة	.....	الاقتصاد

Lesson 2

.....	صناعة / تصنيع	.....	صناعة الصلب
.....	النسيج	.....	صناعي
.....	معتمد على نفسه	.....	مصدر طاقة
.....	منتجات	.....	آلات
.....	الغاز الطبيعي	.....	أقمشة
.....	طاقة الرياح	.....	جودة عالية

Lesson 3

.....	حقول	.....	محلات محلية
.....	مصانع النسيج	.....	في الخارج
.....	الحكومة	.....	فخور
.....	ينتج	.....	يدعم

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	المدن الساحلية	.....	الساحل الشمالي
.....	فاخر	.....	ذهبي
.....	ممرات/ أرضة للمشى	.....	رائع/ مذهل
.....	الجمال	.....	مكان سياحي
.....	مدينة حيوية	.....	ضخم
.....	الهيروغليفية	.....	مجمع

Unit 5

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	ركاب	.....	إعلان
.....	مصعد	.....	ماكينة التذاكر
.....	سلم متحرك	.....	شاشة رقمية
.....	أبواب ذكية	.....	يدفع بالبطاقة
.....	نقدي	.....	خط
.....	بيئة	.....	دخول
.....	كهرباء	.....	محطة

Lesson 2

.....	طريقة	.....	مونوريل
.....	قواعد	.....	مسار واحد
.....	أنوبيس كهربائي	.....	بذكاء
.....	الأرض	.....	يحجب/ يعيق
.....	مشروع	.....	محطة

Lesson 3

.....	طاقة متجددة	.....	ذاتية القيادة
.....	ضوضاء	.....	مصادر طبيعية
.....	كوكب	.....	حوادث
.....	وقود	.....	أجيال

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	أزمة الأمان	.....	تحت الأرض
.....	رؤية	.....	تكنولوجيا
.....	مزدحم	.....	فكرة
.....	محرر	.....	فوائد
.....	يتخيل	.....	قطارات كهربائية

رقم الإيداع: 2025/31384

خدمة العملاء: 16766



جميع حقوق الملكية الفكرية وحقوق المؤلف لهذا الكتاب
مملوكة لدار نهضة مصر للنشر

يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين
أي جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية أو بالتصوير
أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابي صريح من الناشر.